



# **Song of Solomon**

**translationNotes**

v6

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 6

**Published:** 2017-02-22

## **Table of Contents**

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>8</b>
Introduction to The Song of Solomon . . . . .	8
Song of Solomon 1 General Notes . . . . .	14
Song of Solomon 1:1-4 . . . . .	15
Song of Solomon 1:5-6 . . . . .	17
Song of Solomon 1:7 . . . . .	19
Song of Solomon 1:8 . . . . .	20
Song of Solomon 1:9-11 . . . . .	21
Song of Solomon 1:12-14 . . . . .	23
Song of Solomon 1:15 . . . . .	25
Song of Solomon 1:16-17 . . . . .	26
Song of Solomon 2 General Notes . . . . .	28
Song of Solomon 2:1-2 . . . . .	29
Song of Solomon 2:3-4 . . . . .	31
Song of Solomon 2:5-6 . . . . .	33
Song of Solomon 2:7 . . . . .	34
Song of Solomon 2:8-9 . . . . .	36
Song of Solomon 2:10-11 . . . . .	38
Song of Solomon 2:12-13 . . . . .	39
Song of Solomon 2:14 . . . . .	41
Song of Solomon 2:15 . . . . .	43
Song of Solomon 2:16-17 . . . . .	44
Song of Solomon 3 General Notes . . . . .	46
Song of Solomon 3:1-2 . . . . .	47
Song of Solomon 3:3-4 . . . . .	49
Song of Solomon 3:5 . . . . .	51
Song of Solomon 3:6-7 . . . . .	52
Song of Solomon 3:8-9 . . . . .	54
Song of Solomon 3:10-11 . . . . .	56
Song of Solomon 4 General Notes . . . . .	58
Song of Solomon 4:1 . . . . .	59
Song of Solomon 4:2 . . . . .	60
Song of Solomon 4:3 . . . . .	62
Song of Solomon 4:4-5 . . . . .	63
Song of Solomon 4:6-7 . . . . .	65
Song of Solomon 4:8 . . . . .	67
Song of Solomon 4:9 . . . . .	69
Song of Solomon 4:10-11 . . . . .	70
Song of Solomon 4:12-14 . . . . .	72
Song of Solomon 4:15-16 . . . . .	74

*Table of Contents*

---

Song of Solomon 5 General Notes . . . . .	76
Song of Solomon 5:1 . . . . .	77
Song of Solomon 5:2 . . . . .	79
Song of Solomon 5:3-4 . . . . .	81
Song of Solomon 5:5 . . . . .	83
Song of Solomon 5:6 . . . . .	84
Song of Solomon 5:7 . . . . .	86
Song of Solomon 5:8 . . . . .	87
Song of Solomon 5:9 . . . . .	88
Song of Solomon 5:10-11 . . . . .	89
Song of Solomon 5:12 . . . . .	91
Song of Solomon 5:13 . . . . .	92
Song of Solomon 5:14 . . . . .	93
Song of Solomon 5:15 . . . . .	94
Song of Solomon 5:16 . . . . .	95
Song of Solomon 6 General Notes . . . . .	96
Song of Solomon 6:1 . . . . .	97
Song of Solomon 6:2-3 . . . . .	98
Song of Solomon 6:4 . . . . .	100
Song of Solomon 6:5 . . . . .	101
Song of Solomon 6:6-7 . . . . .	102
Song of Solomon 6:8-9 . . . . .	103
Song of Solomon 6:10 . . . . .	105
Song of Solomon 6:11-12 . . . . .	106
Song of Solomon 6:13 . . . . .	108
Song of Solomon 7 General Notes . . . . .	109
Song of Solomon 7:1 . . . . .	110
Song of Solomon 7:2 . . . . .	111
Song of Solomon 7:3-4 . . . . .	113
Song of Solomon 7:5-6 . . . . .	115
Song of Solomon 7:7-8 . . . . .	117
Song of Solomon 7:9 . . . . .	119
Song of Solomon 7:10-11 . . . . .	120
Song of Solomon 7:12 . . . . .	121
Song of Solomon 7:13 . . . . .	122
Song of Solomon 8 General Notes . . . . .	123
Song of Solomon 8:1 . . . . .	124
Song of Solomon 8:2-3 . . . . .	125
Song of Solomon 8:4 . . . . .	127
Song of Solomon 8:5 . . . . .	128
Song of Solomon 8:6 . . . . .	130
Song of Solomon 8:7 . . . . .	132
Song of Solomon 8:8 . . . . .	134

Song of Solomon 8:9 . . . . .	135
Song of Solomon 8:10 . . . . .	136
Song of Solomon 8:11-12 . . . . .	137
Song of Solomon 8:13 . . . . .	139
Song of Solomon 8:14 . . . . .	140
<b>translationQuestions . . . . .</b>	<b>141</b>
Song of Solomon 1 . . . . .	141
Song of Solomon 2 . . . . .	144
Song of Solomon 3 . . . . .	148
Song of Solomon 4 . . . . .	150
Song of Solomon 5 . . . . .	153
Song of Solomon 6 . . . . .	156
Song of Solomon 7 . . . . .	159
Song of Solomon 8 . . . . .	161
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>164</b>
angry, anger . . . . .	164
anoint, anointed . . . . .	165
banquet . . . . .	166
beloved . . . . .	167
blemish . . . . .	168
bless, blessed, blessing . . . . .	169
bride . . . . .	171
call, calling, called, call out . . . . .	172
captive, captivity . . . . .	174
Translation Suggestions . . . . .	175
Carmel, Mount Carmel . . . . .	176
cedar . . . . .	177
chariot . . . . .	178
companion . . . . .	179
conceive, conception . . . . .	180
concubine . . . . .	181
crown, to crown . . . . .	182
curtain . . . . .	183
Damascus . . . . .	184
David . . . . .	185
death, die, dead . . . . .	186
deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn . . . . .	188
delight . . . . .	189
desert, wilderness . . . . .	190
dove, pigeon . . . . .	191
dream . . . . .	192
En Gedi . . . . .	193
fig . . . . .	194

*Table of Contents*

---

fire . . . . .	195
flock, herd . . . . .	196
flood . . . . .	197
fountain, spring . . . . .	198
frankincense . . . . .	199
fruit, fruitful . . . . .	200
Gilead . . . . .	202
goat, kid . . . . .	203
gold . . . . .	204
grape . . . . .	205
hades, sheol . . . . .	206
heart . . . . .	207
honey, honeycomb . . . . .	208
horse . . . . .	209
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel . . . . .	210
Jerusalem . . . . .	211
Kedar . . . . .	213
king . . . . .	214
kiss . . . . .	215
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	216
Lebanon . . . . .	217
leopard . . . . .	218
life, live, living, alive . . . . .	219
like, likeness . . . . .	221
lion . . . . .	222
love . . . . .	223
Mount Hermon . . . . .	225
myrrh . . . . .	226
name . . . . .	227
oath, swear, swear by . . . . .	228
oil . . . . .	229
palm . . . . .	230
perfect . . . . .	231
Pharaoh, king of Egypt . . . . .	232
pillar, column . . . . .	233
pomegranate . . . . .	234
possess, possession . . . . .	235
praise . . . . .	236
prince, princess . . . . .	237
promise . . . . .	238
pure, purify, purification . . . . .	239
purple . . . . .	240
queen . . . . .	241

rejoice . . . . .	242
robe . . . . .	243
sandal . . . . .	244
seal, to seal . . . . .	245
sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking . . . . .	246
shadow . . . . .	247
sheep, ram, ewe . . . . .	248
shepherd, to shepherd . . . . .	249
shield . . . . .	251
silver . . . . .	252
sister . . . . .	253
Solomon . . . . .	254
soul . . . . .	255
stronghold, fortress, fortified . . . . .	256
sword . . . . .	257
teach, teaching, teacher, taught . . . . .	258
tent . . . . .	259
terror, terrify . . . . .	260
thorn, thistle . . . . .	261
time . . . . .	262
Tirzah . . . . .	263
turn, turn away, turn back . . . . .	264
veil . . . . .	265
vine . . . . .	266
vineyard . . . . .	267
voice . . . . .	268
warrior, soldier . . . . .	269
watch, watchman . . . . .	270
watchtower, tower . . . . .	271
wheat . . . . .	272
wine, wineskin, new wine . . . . .	273
Zion, Mount Zion . . . . .	274
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>275</b>
Active or Passive . . . . .	275
Doublet . . . . .	278
Ellipsis . . . . .	280
Euphemism . . . . .	282
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	284
Hypothetical Situations . . . . .	286
Idiom . . . . .	289
Litotes . . . . .	291
Metaphor . . . . .	293
Metonymy . . . . .	298

*Table of Contents*

---

Parallelism . . . . .	300
Personification . . . . .	302
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	304
Simile . . . . .	307
Synecdoche . . . . .	310
Biblical Money . . . . .	312
How to Translate Names . . . . .	314
Numbers . . . . .	318
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	321
Poetry . . . . .	324



## translationNotes

### Introduction to The Song of Solomon

#### Part 1: General Introduction

##### Outline of The Song of Solomon

1. The bride longs for the bridegroom to arrive (1:1–2:7)
2. The bridegroom praises the woman he loves (2:8–3:5)
3. The bridegroom arrives and praises the bride (3:6–5:1)
4. The bride longs for the bridegroom (5:2–6:9)
5. The bridegroom praises the beauty of his bride (6:1–8:4)
6. Final thoughts about love between a man and a woman (8:5–14)

##### What is the Song of Solomon about?

The Song of Solomon is a poem or a series of poems about the love between a man and a woman. It became traditional for Jews to interpret the book as a picture of God’s love for the people of Israel. In the same way, it became traditional for Christians to interpret it as a picture of Christ’s love for all Christian believers.

##### How should the title of this book be translated?

This book may also be called the “Songs of Love,” “Great poems of love” or “The love songs of Solomon.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

##### Who wrote The Song of Solomon?

The idea that Solomon, king of Israel, was its author comes from the opening verse of the book (“The Song of Songs, which is Solomon’s”). However, there are different ways to interpret this verse, so not everyone is persuaded that Solomon was the book’s author.

#### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

##### What place do the descriptions of sexual behavior have in The Song of Solomon?

The Song of Solomon shows approval of sexual behavior as an expression of love between a husband and wife.

#### Part 3: Important Translation Issues

##### How many characters are in The Song of Solomon?

The two main characters in this book are the man and the woman, who love each other. There is also the group of women to whom the young woman speaks, and who also themselves make comments, but that group of women might be imaginary, existing only in the young woman's mind. Some interpreters believe there may be more characters than these, but this is not certain. The interpretation adopted by the ULB and UDB recognize only the man, the woman, and the group of women.

### **How should one translate The Song of Solomon if the readers will view certain terms as coarse, vulgar or improper?**

There are many images or forms appearing in the Song of Solomon that, when translated, may be considered improper. The translator should try to avoid offensive language if possible, by using expressions that will not cause offence. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### **How do I translate metaphors in this book?**

There are many metaphors in this book. These metaphors are often ambiguous. If they have sexual meanings, metaphors describing feelings or emotions are often used as euphemisms in order to avoid offense by veiling their meaning. However, since their meanings are often very unclear, ambiguity in translation is encouraged. You might choose to translate the words as they are written in order to avoid committing to a specific meaning or defining their precise intended meaning.

### **List of translationAcademy Topics in Song of Solomon**

- \* [Active or Passive](#) is found in: [02:12](#), [03:06](#), [04:02](#), [05:15](#), [07:02](#), [08:07](#)
- \* [Doublet](#) is found in: [03:06](#)
- \* [Ellipsis](#) is found in: [03:06](#), [04:10](#), [08:11](#)
- \* [Euphemism](#) is found in: [05:02](#), [05:03](#)
- \* [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) is found in: [04:02](#), [05:02](#), [05:05](#), [05:06](#), [06:01](#), [07:01](#), [07:13](#), [08:02](#)
- \* [Hypothetical Situations](#) is found in: [06:13](#), [08:07](#)
- \* [Idiom](#) is found in: [04:09](#), [05:02](#), [05:06](#), [06:08](#), [08:08](#)
- \* [Metaphor](#) is found in: [01:05](#), [01:16](#), [02:01](#), [02:03](#), [02:05](#), [02:15](#), [02:16](#), [04:02](#), [04:04](#), [04:06](#), [04:08](#), [04:09](#), [04:10](#), [04:12](#), [04:15](#), [05:01](#), [05:08](#), [05:10](#), [05:12](#), [05:13](#), [05:14](#), [05:15](#), [06:02](#), [07:02](#), [07:05](#), [07:07](#), [08:02](#), [08:06](#), [08:07](#), [08:09](#), [08:11](#), [08:14](#)
- \* [Metonymy](#) is found in: [05:16](#), [07:01](#)
- \* [Parallelism](#) is found in: [03:01](#), [04:06](#), [04:10](#), [05:02](#)
- \* [Personification](#) is found in: [04:15](#)
- \* [Rhetorical Question](#) is found in: [01:07](#), [05:03](#), [06:10](#), [08:05](#)

- \* **Simile** is found in: 01:01, 01:05, 01:09, 01:12, 01:15, 02:01, 02:03, 02:08, 03:06, 04:01, 04:02, 04:03, 04:04, 05:12, 05:13, 05:15, 06:04, 06:10, 06:11, 07:01, 07:02, 07:05, 07:07, 07:09, 08:01, 08:06, 08:10
- \* **Synecdoche** is found in: 08:10
- \* **Biblical Money** is found in: 08:11
- \* **How to Translate Names** is found in: 04:08, 07:03, 07:13, 08:11
- \* **Numbers** is found in: 04:04, 06:08
- \* **Poetry** is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 04:01, 05:01, 06:01, 08:01

### **List of translationWords in Song of Solomon**

- \* **angry, anger** is found in: 01:05
- \* **anoint, anointed** is found in: 01:01
- \* **banquet** is found in: 02:03
- \* **beloved** is found in: 01:12, 02:03, 02:08, 02:10, 02:16, 03:01, 03:03, 04:15, 05:02, 05:03, 05:05, 05:06, 05:08, 05:09, 05:10, 05:16, 06:01, 07:05, 07:09, 07:13, 08:05, 08:14
- \* **blemish** is found in: 04:06
- \* **bless, blessed, blessing** is found in: 06:08
- \* **bride** is found in: 04:08, 04:09, 04:10, 04:12, 05:01
- \* **call, calling, called, call out** is found in: 05:06, 06:08
- \* **captive, captivity** is found in: 07:05
- \* **Carmel, Mount Carmel** is found in: 07:05
- \* **cedar** is found in: 01:16, 05:15, 08:09
- \* **chariot** is found in: 01:09, 06:11
- \* **companion** is found in: 01:07, 08:13
- \* **conceive, conception** is found in: 03:03, 08:05
- \* **concubine** is found in: 06:08
- \* **crown, to crown** is found in: 03:10
- \* **curtain** is found in: 01:05
- \* **Damascus** is found in: 07:03
- \* **David** is found in: 04:04
- \* **death, die, dead** is found in: 08:06
- \* **deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn** is found in: 02:07, 03:05, 04:04
- \* **delight** is found in: 01:01

- \* **desert, wilderness** is found in: 03:06, 08:05
- \* **dove, pigeon** is found in: 01:15, 02:12, 02:14, 04:01, 05:02, 05:12, 06:08
- \* **dream** is found in: 05:02
- \* **En Gedi** is found in: 01:12
- \* **fig** is found in: 02:12
- \* **fire** is found in: 08:06
- \* **flock, herd** is found in: 01:07, 01:08, 04:01, 04:02, 06:05, 06:06
- \* **flood** is found in: 08:07
- \* **fountain, spring** is found in: 04:12, 04:15
- \* **frankincense** is found in: 03:06, 04:06
- \* **fruit, fruitful** is found in: 02:03, 04:15, 07:07, 08:11
- \* **Gilead** is found in: 04:01, 06:05
- \* **goat, kid** is found in: 01:08, 04:01, 06:05
- \* **gold** is found in: 01:09, 03:10, 05:10, 05:14, 05:15
- \* **grape** is found in: 07:07
- \* **hades, sheol** is found in: 08:06
- \* **heart** is found in: 04:09, 05:02, 05:03, 05:06, 08:06
- \* **honey, honeycomb** is found in: 04:10, 05:01
- \* **horse** is found in: 01:09
- \* **Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel** is found in: 03:06
- \* **Jerusalem** is found in: 01:05, 02:07, 03:05, 03:10, 05:08, 05:16, 06:04, 08:04
- \* **Kedar** is found in: 01:05
- \* **king** is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 03:08, 03:10, 07:05
- \* **kiss** is found in: 01:01, 08:01
- \* **know, knowledge, make known** is found in: 01:08
- \* **Lebanon** is found in: 03:08, 04:08, 04:10, 04:15, 05:15, 07:03
- \* **leopard** is found in: 04:08
- \* **life, live, living, alive** is found in: 03:10
- \* **like, likeness** is found in: 01:12, 02:08, 04:02, 04:04, 04:10, 05:12, 05:13, 05:15, 06:10, 07:02, 08:06, 08:10
- \* **lion** is found in: 04:08

- \* **love** is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 01:09, 02:01, 02:03, 02:05, 02:10, 03:01, 03:03, 03:10, 04:10, 05:01, 05:02, 05:08, 06:04, 07:12, 08:06, 08:07
- \* **Mount Hermon** is found in: 04:08
- \* **myrrh** is found in: 01:12, 03:06, 04:06, 04:12, 05:01, 05:05, 05:13
- \* **name** is found in: 01:01
- \* **oath, swear, swear by** is found in: 03:05, 05:09, 08:04
- \* **oil** is found in: 01:01
- \* **palm** is found in: 07:07
- \* **perfect** is found in: 06:13
- \* **Pharaoh, king of Egypt** is found in: 01:09
- \* **pillar, column** is found in: 03:06, 05:15
- \* **pomegranate** is found in: 04:03, 04:12, 06:06, 06:11, 07:12, 08:02
- \* **possess, possession** is found in: 08:07
- \* **praise** is found in: 06:08
- \* **prince, princess** is found in: 06:11, 07:01
- \* **promise** is found in: 08:08
- \* **pure, purify, purification** is found in: 05:02, 05:10
- \* **purple** is found in: 03:10, 07:05
- \* **queen** is found in: 06:08
- \* **rejoice** is found in: 01:01
- \* **robe** is found in: 05:03
- \* **sandal** is found in: 07:01
- \* **seal, to seal** is found in: 04:12, 08:06
- \* **sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking** is found in: 02:07, 03:05, 08:04
- \* **shadow** is found in: 02:03, 02:16, 04:06
- \* **sheep, ram, ewe** is found in: 04:02, 06:06
- \* **shepherd, to shepherd** is found in: 01:08
- \* **shield** is found in: 04:04
- \* **silver** is found in: 01:09, 03:10, 08:09, 08:11
- \* **sister** is found in: 05:01, 05:02
- \* **Solomon** is found in: 01:01, 01:05, 03:06, 03:08, 03:10, 08:11
- \* **soul** is found in: 03:03

- \* **stronghold, fortress, fortified** is found in: 08:10
- \* **sword** is found in: 03:08
- \* **teach, teaching, teacher, taught** is found in: 08:02
- \* **tent** is found in: 01:05
- \* **terror, terrify** is found in: 03:08
- \* **thorn, thistle** is found in: 02:01
- \* **time** is found in: 02:12
- \* **Tirzah** is found in: 06:04
- \* **turn, turn away, turn back** is found in: 05:06
- \* **veil** is found in: 04:01, 04:03, 06:06
- \* **vine** is found in: 02:12, 06:11, 07:12
- \* **vineyard** is found in: 01:05, 01:12, 02:15, 07:12, 08:11
- \* **voice** is found in: 02:14
- \* **warrior, soldier** is found in: 03:06, 04:04
- \* **watch, watchman** is found in: 03:03, 05:07
- \* **watchtower, tower** is found in: 04:04, 07:03, 08:09, 08:10
- \* **wheat** is found in: 07:02
- \* **wine, wineskin, new wine** is found in: 01:01, 04:10, 05:01, 07:02, 07:09, 08:02
- \* **Zion, Mount Zion** is found in: 03:10

## **Song of Solomon 1 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Kisses**

The kisses in this chapter are a type of kiss that was only done between a husband and a wife. It is an intimate kiss. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### **Love and affection**

This chapter is centered on the feelings of love, affection and attraction. Different cultural standards may make translation difficult and the translator may use euphemisms to avoid offending people. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphors**

In the ancient Near East, it was common to describe a woman using metaphors involving animals. In many cultures today, this can be considered offensive. Different metaphors of beauty are used in different cultures. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **“I am dark”**

In the ancient Near East, many people were more attracted to light skinned people. This is because light skinned people were typically rich and did not need to work outside in the sun.

#### **Links:**

- [Song of Solomon 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)

## Song of Solomon 1:1-4

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> This is King Solomon's most beautiful song.

<sup>2</sup> Kiss me on my lips,

because your love for me is more delightful than wine.

<sup>3</sup> The fragrance of the perfume on your skin is very sweet.

And your honor is very great and is spreading,

like the fragrance of the special oil that you have put on your skin.

That is why the other young women are attracted to you.

<sup>4</sup> Take me quickly;

take me to your home.

He is like a king to me;

he has brought me into his bedroom.

I am very happy about you;

my love for you is better than wine.

It is not surprising that the other young women adore you.

### ULB:

**1** <sup>1</sup> The Song of Songs, which is Solomon's.

<sup>2</sup> Oh, that you would kiss me with the kisses of your mouth,

for your love is better than wine.

<sup>3</sup> Your anointing oils have a delightful fragrance;

your name is like flowing perfume,

so the young women love you.

<sup>4</sup> Take me with you, and we will run.

The king has brought me into his rooms.

I am glad; I rejoice about you;

let me celebrate your love; it is better than wine.

It is natural for the other women to adore you.



**translationWords:**

- Solomon
- kiss
- love
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- anoint, anointed
- oil
- delight
- name
- king
- rejoice

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **General Information:** - Part One of the book begins in 1:2.
- **The Song of Songs** - “The Best Song” or “The Most Excellent Song”
- **which is Solomon’s** - “which is about Solomon” or “which Solomon composed”
- **Your anointing oils** - “The oils that you put on your body”
- **have a delightful fragrance** - “smell wonderful”
- **your name is like flowing perfume** - The woman realizes that her lover has a good reputation. AT: “your name is wonderful like the smell of oil that someone has poured out.” (See: [Simile](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **Take me with you** - “Bring me along with you.” The word “you” refers to the lover.
- **we will run** - The word “we” refers to the young woman together with her lover.
- **about you** - “because of you”
- **let me celebrate** - “let me praise”
- **It is natural for the other women to adore you** - “All who love you are right”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 Translation Questions](#)

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

**Song of Solomon 1:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> You women of Jerusalem,

I am dark but beautiful;  
my dark skin is like the tents in Kedar,  
or like the beautiful curtains in Solomon's palace.

<sup>6</sup> But do not stare at me because the sun has made my skin dark.  
my brothers were angry with me,  
so they forced me to work out in the sunshine in the vineyards,  
so I was not able to take good care of my body.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> I am dark but lovely,  
you daughters of Jerusalem's men—  
dark like the tents of Kedar,  
lovely like the curtains of Solomon.  
<sup>6</sup> Do not stare at me because I am dark,  
because the sun has scorched me.  
My mother's sons were angry with me;  
they made me keeper of the vineyards,  
but my own vineyard I have not kept.

**translationWords:**

- Jerusalem
- tent
- Kedar
- curtain
- Solomon
- angry, anger
- vineyard

**translationNotes:**

- **I am dark but lovely** - “My skin is dark, but I am still beautiful”
- **dark like the tents of Kedar** - The nomadic tribes in Kedar used black goat skins to build their homes. The woman is comparing her skin to these tents. (See: [Simile](#))
- **lovely like the curtains of Solomon** - She compares her skin to the beautiful curtains Solomon produced either for his own palace or for the Temple. (See: [Simile](#))
- **scorched** - “burned”
- **My mother’s sons** - “My half-brothers.” These brothers probably had the same mother as the woman but not the same father.
- **keeper of the vineyards** - “the person who took care of the vineyards”
- **but my own vineyard I have not kept** - The woman compares herself to a vineyard. AT: “but I have not been able to take care of myself.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 1:7

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> You whom I love, where will you take your flock of sheep today?

Where will you allow them to rest at noontime?

I want to know because it is not right for me to wander around like a prostitute

looking for you among the flocks that belong to your friends.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Tell me, you whom I love,

where do you feed your flock?

Where do you rest your flock at noontime?

Why should I be like someone who wanders

beside the flocks of your companions?

### translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [companion](#)

### translationNotes:

- **feed your flock** - “graze your flocks”
- **rest your flock** - “have your flock lie down”
- **Why should I be like someone who wanders beside the flocks of your companions?** - AT: “Tell me so that I will not need to wander around among the flocks of your companions when I am looking for you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **wanders** - “goes all around”
- **companions** - “friends” or “co-workers”

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 1:8

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> You who are the most beautiful of all the women,  
if you search for me and do not know where I will take my sheep,  
follow the tracks of the sheep.  
Then allow your young goats to graze near the shepherds' tents.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> If you do not know, most beautiful among women,  
follow the tracks of my flock,  
and pasture your young goats near the shepherds' tents.

### translationWords:

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)

### translationNotes:

- **follow the tracks of my flock** - “follow along behind the flock”
- **tracks** - marks of the hooves of the flock on the ground
- **pasture your young goats** - “graze your young goats” or “let your young goats eat”

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 1:9-11****UDB:**

- <sup>9</sup> You are beautiful, my darling, like one of the young female horses  
that pull the chariots belonging to the king of Egypt.
- <sup>10</sup> Your cheeks are decorated with jewelry,  
and there are strings of beads around your neck.
- <sup>11</sup> I will make for you some gold earrings  
that are decorated with silver.

**ULB:**

- <sup>9</sup> I compare you, my love,  
to a mare among Pharaoh's chariot horses.
- <sup>10</sup> Your cheeks are beautiful with ornaments,  
your neck with strings of jewels.
- <sup>11</sup> I will make for you gold ornaments  
with silver studs.

**translationWords:**

- love
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- chariot
- horse
- gold
- silver

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The woman's lover continues speaking.
- **my love** - "the one whom I love"
- **to a mare among Pharaoh's chariot horses** - The lover compares the young woman to a beautiful female horse. (See: **Simile**)
- **Pharaoh's chariot horses** - "Pharaoh's horses that pull chariots"
- **with silver studs** - "with spots of silver"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 1:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> While the king was on his couch,

the smell of my perfume spread around the room.

<sup>13</sup> The man who loves me stays between my breasts during the night like a bag of perfume tied around my neck.

<sup>14</sup> He is like a bunch of flowers from the vineyards at En Gedi.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> While the king lay on his couch,

my nard emitted its fragrance.

<sup>13</sup> My beloved is to me like a bag of myrrh  
that spends the night lying between my breasts.

<sup>14</sup> My beloved is to me like a cluster of henna flowers  
in the vineyards of En Gedi.

### translationWords:

- king
- beloved
- like, likeness
- myrrh
- vineyard
- En Gedi

### translationNotes:

- **lay on his couch** - “sat at his table”
- **emitted its fragrance** - “gave off its good smell”
- **nard** - an oil that people got from the expensive nard or spikenard (valerian plant with small pink or white flowers) and used to make their skin soft to have a pleasant odor.
- **My beloved is to me like** - “For me, my beloved is like”
- **spends the night lying between my breasts** - “lies between my breasts all night long.” Women put a small amount of expensive myrrh between their breasts to give them a continual pleasant odor. (See: [Simile](#))
- **henna flowers** - flowers from a small desert tree that people used as a perfume



**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 1:15

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> You whom I love, you are beautiful;  
you are very beautiful!  
Your eyes are as delightful as doves.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> See, you are beautiful, my love;  
see, you are beautiful;  
your eyes are like doves.

### translationWords:

- dove, pigeon

### translationNotes:

- **See** - The word “See” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed”
- **your eyes are like doves** - Doves are symbols of purity, innocence, gentleness and love. AT: “your eyes are gentle and lovely like the eyes of doves. (See: [Simile](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 1:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> You who love me, you are very delightful,

you are wonderful!

This green grass in the countryside will be like a couch where we can lie down.

<sup>17</sup> Branches of cedar trees will shade us;

the fir branches overhead are like a roof for us.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> See, you are handsome, my beloved, how handsome.

The lush plants serve as our bed.

<sup>17</sup> The beams of our house are cedar tree branches,

and our rafters are fir branches.

**translationWords:**

- cedar

**translationNotes:**

- **See** - The word "See" here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "Indeed"
- **handsome** - "good looking" or "lovely" or "beautiful"
- **The lush plants** - plants that are green, moist, and grow abundantly
- **serve as our bed** - "are our bed." The woman describes how they lay on the lush plants outside as though they were their bed
- **The beams of our house are cedar tree branches** - The woman describes the forest as though it were their house. AT: "The branches of the cedar tree are like the beams of our house. (See: [Metaphor](#))"
- **beams** - large logs that support the rest of the house
- **and our rafters are fir branches** - "and fir branches are like our rafters"
- **rafters** - pieces of wood that hold up the roof of a house

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)

- Song of Solomon 01 General Notes
- [Song of Solomon 01 Translation Questions](#)

## **Song of Solomon 2 General Notes**

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

Women are compared to flowers in this chapter. This metaphor may describe a woman's beauty and delicacy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Euphemisms**

It is possible that some of the metaphors used in this chapter are actually euphemisms. These euphemisms would refer to sex or the physical love between a husband and a wife. (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Song of Solomon 02:01 Notes](#)

## Song of Solomon 2:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> I am like an insignificant flower in the plains,

like an insignificant lily growing in a valley.

<sup>2</sup> Among all the other young women,

you, the one whom I love, are like a lily growing among thorns!

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> I am just a flower in a plain,

just a lily in a valley.

<sup>2</sup> As a lily is among thorns,

so are you, my love, among the daughters of my countrymen.

### translationWords:

- thorn, thistle
- love

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **I am just a flower in a plain** - The woman compares herself with a flower in a plain in order to emphasize that she is a common and delicate girl from the countryside that does not deserve the enormous amount of attention that her lover is giving to her. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a plain** - an area of land that is flat, has no trees, and grows many different kinds of grasses and flowers
- **just a lily in a valley** - The woman compares herself with a lily in a valley for the same reason that she compared herself with a flower in a plain.
- **lily** - a sweet smelling flower that is shaped like a trumpet
- **a valley** - This refers to a very large flat area between mountains.
- **As a lily ... my countrymen** - The man means that the woman is far more beautiful and precious than all the other young women, just as a lily is far more beautiful and precious than all of the thorn bushes that might surround it. (See: [Simile](#))
- **my love** - See how you translated this in [1:9](#).
- **the daughters of my countrymen** - “other young women”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 2:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Among all the other men, this man is the one who loves me; he is like a tree that grows in the forest.

Under his shade I am safe from the sun.

When he is close to me, it is like eating sweet fruit.

<sup>4</sup> He led me to the room where I feasted on his love,  
where he made love to him, as if he were covering me with his love.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> As an apricot tree is among the trees of the forest,  
so is my beloved among the young men.

I sit down under his shadow with great delight,  
and his fruit is sweet to my taste.

<sup>4</sup> He brought me to the banqueting hall,  
and his banner over me was love.

### translationWords:

- beloved
- shadow
- fruit, fruitful
- banquet
- love

### translationNotes:

- **As an apricot tree ... the young men** - As an apricot tree is more comforting and delightful than any of the other trees in the forest so the woman's beloved is more comforting and delightful than all the other young men. (See: [Simile](#))
- **apricot tree** - a tree that produces a small yellow fruit that is very sweet
- **I sit down under his shadow with great delight** - The woman finds great joy and comfort in being so near to her beloved. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and his fruit is sweet to my taste** - The woman compares the enjoyment of her beloved to sweet fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))



- **banqueting hall** - a very large room where people ate large meals and enjoyed visiting with each other
- **and his banner** - A “banner” is a large piece of cloth that people held up in at the front of an army in order to lead the way and give courage to the other men
- **his banner over me was love** - The woman would have been nervous to enter the banqueting hall, but the love of her beloved showed her the way and gave her courage to enter. AT: “but his love guided me and gave me courage like a banner.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 2:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Refresh me and strengthen me with your lovemaking.

It is like eating raisins and other fruit,  
because I want you to love me even more.

<sup>6</sup> I hope he puts his left arm under my head  
and holds me close with his right arm.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Revive me with raisin cakes and refresh me with apricots,  
for I am weak with love.

<sup>6</sup> His left hand is under my head,  
and his right hand embraces me.

### translationWords:

- [love](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Revive me** - “Return my strength” or “Give me energy”
- **with raisin cakes** - “by feeding me cakes made of raisins that stick together in flat patties” or “by giving me raisin cakes”
- **refresh me with apricots** - “support me by giving me apricots” or “help my by giving me apricots”
- **for I am weak with love** - “because my love is so strong that I feel feeble.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **left hand ... right hand** - “left arm ... right arm”
- **embraces me** - “holds me”

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 2:7

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> You young women of Jerusalem,

I want you to take an oath, while the does and gazelles are listening,  
that you will not

disturb us while we are making love

until we are ready to stop.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> I want you to promise, daughters of Jerusalem,

by the gazelles and the does of the fields,

that you will not interrupt our lovemaking

until it is over.

### translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn
- sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking

### translationNotes:

- **daughters of Jerusalem** - “young women of Jerusalem”
- **by the gazelles and the does of the fields** - These animals of the field are shy and timid, but experience absolute freedom.
- **the gazelles** - animals that look a lot like deer and are fast, slender, and shy
- **of the fields** - “that live in the countryside”
- **will not interrupt our lovemaking until it is over** - “will not interrupt us as we make love until we are finished”
- **interrupt** - “disturb” or “bother”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 2:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> I hear the voice of the man who loves me.

It is as though he is leaping over the mountains  
and skipping over the hills

<sup>9</sup> like a deer or a gazelle.

Now he is standing outside the wall of our house,  
looking in the window,  
and peering through the lattice.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> There is the sound of my beloved! Oh, here he comes,  
leaping over the mountains,  
jumping over the hills.

<sup>9</sup> My beloved is like a gazelle or a young stag;  
look, he is standing behind our wall,  
gazing through the window,  
peering through the lattice.

**translationWords:**

- beloved
- like, likeness

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Here begins Part Two of the book
- **Oh, here he comes** - The word “Oh” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed”
- **leaping over the mountains, jumping over the hills** - “leaping on the mountains, running quickly on the hills.” The beloved runs quickly and gracefully like a gazelle, even over the rough terrain of the mountains and the hills.
- **like a gazelle or a young stag** - The woman compares her beloved with a gazelle and a young buck because he is fast, beautiful, and graceful like these animals. (See: **Simile**)
- **a gazelle** - See how you translated “the gazelles” in **2:9**.

- **a young stag** - “a young buck” or “a young male deer”
- **look, he is standing** - The word “look” here shows that the woman saw something interesting.
- **behind our wall** - “on the other side of our wall.” The woman is in a house and her beloved is outside the house.
- **our wall** - The word “our” refers to the woman and the other people in the house with her.
- **gazing through the window** - “he stares in through the windows”
- **peering through the lattice** - “he peeks through the lattice”
- **lattice** - long strips of wood that someone has woven together in order to create a cover for a window or some other entrance

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 2:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> He spoke to me and said,

”You whom I love, get up;  
my beautiful one, come with me!

<sup>11</sup> Look, the winter has ended;  
the rain has stopped.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> My beloved spoke to me and said,  
”Arise, my love;  
My beautiful one, come away with me.

<sup>11</sup> Look, the winter is past;  
the rain is over and gone.

### translationWords:

- [beloved](#)
- [love](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Arise** - “Get up”
- **my love** - See how you translated this in [1:9](#).
- **Look, the winter** - The word “Look” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed”
- **the rain is over and gone** - In Israel, it only rains during the winter.

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 2:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> The flowers are blooming throughout the country.

It is now time to sing;  
we hear the pigeons cooing.

<sup>13</sup> There are young figs on the fig trees,  
and there are blossoms on the grapevines  
and their fragrance fills the air.

You whom I love, get up;  
my beautiful one, come with me!

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> The flowers have appeared in the land;  
the time for pruning and the singing of birds has come,  
and the sound of the doves is heard in our land.

<sup>13</sup> The fig tree ripens her green figs,  
and the vines are in blossom;  
they give off their fragrance.

Arise, my love, my beautiful one, and come away.

**translationWords:**

- **time**
- dove, pigeon
- **fig**
- **vine**

**translationNotes:**

- **The flowers have appeared** - AT: "You can see flowers" or "People can see flowers." (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **in the land** - "all over this land"



- **the time for pruning** - “the season for people to prune”
- **and the singing of birds** - “and for birds to sing”
- **pruning** - cutting off branches from a plant so that it will produce more fruit or look better
- **the sound of the doves is heard** - AT: “you can hear doves cooing” or “people can hear the sound of doves”
- **vines are in blossom** - “vines are flowering” or “vines have flowers”
- **they give off** - The word “they” refers to the blossoms on the vines.
- **fragrance** - “sweet smell”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 2:14

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> You are like a dove hiding in the rocky cliff.

Show me your face,  
and allow me to hear your voice,  
because your voice is sounds sweet,  
and your face is lovely.”

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> My dove, in the clefts of the rock,  
in the secret clefts of the mountain crags,  
let me see your face.  
Let me hear your voice,  
for your voice is sweet, and your face is lovely.”

### translationWords:

- dove, pigeon
- voice

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The woman’s beloved is speaking.
- **My dove** - The woman’s beloved compares the woman with a dove because she has a beautiful face and a beautiful voice like a dove and because he was to be with her in a place that is far away from other people just as doves live in places far away from people.
- **the clefts of the rock** - “the hiding places of the cliffs.” Clefts are large cracks in the side of mountain rocks.
- **in the secret clefts of the mountain crags** - “in the secret places on the steep mountain sides.” This phrase describes the place where the beloved wants to see the face of the woman.
- **your face** - “your appearance” or “your form” or “what you look like”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 2:15

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> There are other men who ruin women as wild dogs ruin vineyards;  
do not allow those men to attack me.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Catch the jackals for us, the little jackals  
that spoil vineyards,  
for our vineyard is in blossom.

### translationWords:

- [vineyard](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the jackals** - This could also be translated as “the foxes.” These animals look like small dogs and were often used in love poetry to represent eager young men who would spoil a young lady. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for us** - The word “us” could possibly refer to 1) the woman and her lover or 2) the woman and the rest of her family.
- **the little jackals** - “the young jackals.” Jackals give birth to their young in the spring when the vines are blooming.
- **that spoil** - “that wreck” or “that destroy.” Jackals and foxes destroy vineyards by digging holes and eating vines and grapes. This could also represent the young men who spoil the young ladies. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in blossom** - This could represent a young lady ready for marriage and bearing children. See how you translated this in [2:13](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 2:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> This man who loves me—I belong to him, and he belongs to me.

He takes great pleasure in kissing my lips,  
as sheep love to graze in pastures.

<sup>17</sup> You who love me, you must go away before dawn, when the darkness disappears.

Go away quickly, like a gazelle or like a young deer running on the high hills.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> My beloved is mine, and I am his;  
he grazes among the lilies with pleasure.

<sup>17</sup> Go away, my beloved,  
before the soft winds of dawn blow and the shadows flee away.  
Go away; be like a gazelle or a young stag  
on the rugged mountains.

**translationWords:**

- **beloved**
- **shadow**

**translationNotes:**

- **My beloved is mine** - “My beloved belongs to me”
- **and I am his** - “and I belong to him”
- **he grazes** - “feeds” or “eats grass.” The woman compares her beloved with an animal that eats plants among the lilies, like a gazelle or young stag.
- **dawn** - the part of the day when the sun is rising
- **the shadows flee away** - The woman describes the shadows as though they were running away from the light of the sun. AT: “the shadows disappear.” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **like a gazelle or a young stag** - See how you translated this in **2:9**.
- **gazelle** - a type of slender deer-like animal with long curved horns
- **stag** - an adult male deer
- **rugged** - “rocky” or “rough”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02 Translation Questions](#)

## **Song of Solomon 3 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Longing**

This chapter describes a feeling of longing, or the waiting in anticipation of the one you love. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Metaphors**

In the ancient Near East, it was common to describe a woman using metaphors involving animals. In many cultures today, this can be considered offensive. Different metaphors of beauty are used in different cultures. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Song of Solomon 03:01 Notes](#)

**Song of Solomon 3:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> During the entire night while I lay on my bed,  
     I was longing to see the one I loved with all my heart.  
 I wanted him to come,  
     but he did not.  
<sup>2</sup> So I said to myself,  
 "I will get up now and walk around the city,  
     through the streets and plazas,  
     to search for the one whom I love."  
 So I got up and went out to look for him,  
     but I could not find him.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> At night on my bed  
 I was longing for the one I love;  
 I looked for him, but I could not find him.  
<sup>2</sup> I said to myself, "I will get up and go through the city,  
 through the streets and squares;  
 I will search for my beloved."  
 I searched for him, but I did not find him.

**translationWords:**

- love
- beloved

**translationNotes:**

- **I was longing for the one I love; I looked for him** - This is repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **I looked for him, but I could not find him.** - "was wanting to be with him" or "was longing for him"



- **I was longing for the one I love** - See how you translated “whom my soul loves” in [1:7](#).
- **go through the city** - “walk through the city”
- **through the streets and squares** - The word “squares” indicates the center area of a town where streets or roads come together. It is often an area where people sell items, a market, and a place where people come together to talk.
- **search** - “to look for”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 3:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> The city watchmen saw me

while they were patrolling in the city.

I asked them,

“Have you seen the one whom I love?”

<sup>4</sup> As soon as I walked past them,

I found the one whom I love with all my heart.

I clung to him and would not let him go

until I brought him to my mother’s house,

to the room where my mother had conceived me.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> The watchmen found me as they were making their rounds in the city.

I asked them, “Have you seen my beloved?”

<sup>4</sup> It was only a little while after I had passed them

that I found the one whom my soul loves.

I held him and would not let him go

until I had brought him into my mother’s house,

into the bedroom of the one who had conceived me.

**translationWords:**

- watch, watchman
- beloved
- soul
- love
- conceive, conception

**translationNotes:**

- **watchmen** - the men who have the job of keeping guard of the town at night to keep the people safe

- **as they were making their rounds in the city** - “who were going through the city” or “who were walking around the city”
- **bedroom** - “the room for sleeping”
- **the one who had conceived me** - “the one who had become pregnant with me” or “the one who carried me in her belly.” This refers to her mother.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 3:5****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> You women of Jerusalem,

solemnly promise me, while the does and gazelles are listening,  
that you will not

disturb us while we are making love

until we are ready to stop.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> I want you to swear, daughters of Jerusalem's men,

by the gazelles and the does of the fields,

that you will not interrupt our lovemaking

until it is over.

**translationWords:**

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn](#)
- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **I want you to swear ... until it is over** - See how you translated this in [2:7](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 3:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> What is that I see coming from the wilderness,  
something that is stirring up dust like a column of smoke  
like some from burning myrrh and incense  
made from spices imported by merchants?  
<sup>7</sup> It is Solomon's litter carried by servants and  
surrounded by sixty bodyguards  
chosen from the strongest soldiers in Israel.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> What is that coming up from the wilderness  
like a column of smoke,  
perfumed with myrrh and frankincense,  
with all the powders sold by merchants?  
<sup>7</sup> Look, it is the bed of Solomon;  
sixty warriors surround it,  
sixty soldiers of Israel.

### translationWords:

- desert, wilderness
- pillar, column
- myrrh
- frankincense
- Solomon
- warrior, soldier
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here begins Part Three of the book
- **What is that coming up from the wilderness** - The group of people is traveling from the wilderness to Jerusalem. Because the wilderness is low in the Jordan valley and Jerusalem is high in the mountains, the people must go up in order to reach Jerusalem.

- **like a column of smoke** - Because the people raised much dust in the air as they traveled, the dust looked like smoke in the distance. AT: “with columns of smoke going up.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **perfumed with myrrh and frankincense** - AT: “the sweet smelling smoke of myrrh and frankincense surround it.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **with all the powders sold by merchants** - AT: “and the sweet smelling smoke of all the powders that merchants sell.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **powders** - a fine dust made by crushing something solid
- **Look** - This word shows here that the speaker now discovers the answer to the question in verse 6.
- **it is the bed** - This refers to a bed with a cover that can be carried from one place to another.
- **sixty warriors surround it, sixty soldiers of Israel** - These two phrases refer to the same sixty people. The second phrase clarifies that the “warriors” are “soldiers of Israel.” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **warriors** - men who fight

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 3:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> They all have swords

and they all are trained to use them.

Each one has his sword strapped to his side

and is prepared for dangers that can happen during the night or day.

<sup>9</sup> King Solomon commanded his servants to make that litter for him;

it was made with wood from Lebanon.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> They are expert with the sword and are skilled in warfare.

Every man has his sword at his side,  
armed against the terrors of the night.

<sup>9</sup> King Solomon made himself a sedan chair  
of the wood from Lebanon.

### translationWords:

- sword
- terror, terrify
- king
- Solomon
- Lebanon

### translationNotes:

- **in warfare** - “in battle”
- **armed against** - “in order to guard against” or “in order to fight off”
- **terrors of the night** - This represents any danger that might come during the dark of the night, like robbers.
- **sedan chair** - a chair that has long poles which people used to carry important people

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 Translation Questions](#)



## Song of Solomon 3:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> The canopy that covered it was held up by silver posts,  
and the back of the litter was embroidered with gold.

The seat was covered with purple cloth  
lovingly made by the women of Jerusalem.

<sup>11</sup> You women of Jerusalem,  
come and look at King Solomon  
wearing the headdress that his mother put on his head  
on the day when he was married,  
the happiest day of his life.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> Its posts were made of silver;  
the back was made of gold, and the seat of purple cloth.  
Its interior was decorated with love  
by the daughters of Jerusalem's men.

<sup>11</sup> Go out, daughters of Zion's men, and gaze on King Solomon,  
bearing the crown with which his mother crowned him  
on his wedding day,  
on that happy day of his life.

### translationWords:

- silver
- gold
- purple
- love
- Jerusalem
- Zion, Mount Zion
- king
- Solomon
- crown, to crown
- life, live, living, alive

**translationNotes:**

- **Its posts** - The word “Its” refers to King Solomon’s sedan chair.
- **posts** - The word “posts” here refers to pieces of wood that hold up the tent of cloth around his chair.
- **Its interior was** - “The inside of it was”
- **decorated with love** - “made pretty with love” or “embroidered with love.” This indicates that the women made the sedan beautiful in a special way to show their love for Solomon.
- **and gaze on King Solomon** - “look at King Solomon.” The word “gaze” refers to look at someone or something for a long time, usually with strong emotional feeling.
- **bearing the crown** - “wearing the crown”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 03 Translation Questions](#)

## **Song of Solomon 4 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Beauty**

The woman is described as the epitome of beauty in ancient Israel. Not all cultures share the same the same standards of beauty.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Metaphors**

In the ancient Near East, it was common to describe a woman using metaphors involving animals. In many cultures today, this can be considered offensive. Different metaphors of beauty are used in different cultures. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **“My sister, my bride”**

The woman described is not the sister of her husband. They are not related. Instead, this is a reference to a woman who is a fellow Israelite.

#### **Links:**

- [Song of Solomon 04:01 Notes](#)

## Song of Solomon 4:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> My darling, you are beautiful,

you are very beautiful!

Underneath your veil, your eyes are as gentle as doves.

Your long black hair moves from side to side like a flock of black goats

moving down the slopes of Mount Gilead.

### ULB:

4 <sup>1</sup> Oh, you are beautiful, my love; you are beautiful.

Your eyes are doves behind your veil.

Your hair is like a flock of goats

going down from Mount Gilead.

### translationWords:

- dove, pigeon
- veil
- flock, herd
- goat, kid
- Gilead

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **Oh, you are beautiful ... eyes are doves** - See how you translated this in [1:15](#).
- **Your hair ... Mount Gilead** - Goats are often dark in color and when they walk on the mountains their hair would look like the long waves in a woman's hair. (See: [Simile](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 4:2

### UDB:

<sup>2</sup> Your teeth are very white,

as white as sheep whose wool people have just cut,  
as white as sheep that people have just washed in a stream.

You have all of your teeth on both sides;

none of them is missing.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> Your teeth are like a flock of newly shorn ewes,  
coming up from the washing place. Each one has a twin,  
and none among them is bereaved.

### translationWords:

- like, likeness
- flock, herd
- sheep, ram, ewe

### translationNotes:

- **Your teeth are like a flock of newly shorn ewes** - After sheep have their wool cut off, they are washed and their skin looks very white. This phrase compares the whiteness of the teeth of the woman to the brightness of white sheep wool after their wool has been sheared off. (See: [Simile](#))
- **a flock of newly shorn ewes** - AT: “a flock of ewes whose wool people have cut off.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **coming up from the washing place** - It is implied that the ewes are coming up out of the water. AT: “that are coming up out of the water after people have washed them.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Each one has a twin** - Sheep usually give birth to two lambs at one time. These twin lamb usually look like one another. Each of the woman’s teeth has a matching tooth on the other side of her mouth. So it is like each tooth has a twin like the lambs. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **none among them is bereaved** - None of her teeth have lost their matching tooth on the other side. The woman has not lost any of her teeth.
- **bereaved** - To have lost a loved one who has died.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 4:3

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Your lips are like a scarlet ribbon,  
     and your mouth is lovely.  
 Beneath your veil,  
     your cheeks are round and rosy like the halves of a pomegranate.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Your lips are like a thread of scarlet;  
 your mouth is lovely.  
 Your cheeks are like pomegranate halves  
 behind your veil.

### translationWords:

- [pomegranate](#)
- [veil](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to praise the woman.
- **are like a thread of scarlet** - This phrase compares the color of the woman’s lips with scarlet thread. AT: “are a deep red like scarlet thread.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **scarlet** - a dark red color that is very similar to the color of blood
- **is lovely** - “is beautiful”
- **like pomegranate halves** - Pomegranates are smooth, round, and have a rich red color. AT: “are rosy and round like two halves of a pomegranate.” (See: [Simile](#))
- **behind your veil** - See how you translated this in [4:1](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 4:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> Your long neck is beautiful, like the tower of King David

that was built using layers of stone.

The ornaments on the necklaces around your neck are like a thousand shields hanging on the walls of a tower;

each one belongs to a warrior.

<sup>5</sup> Your breasts are as delicate as two young twin deer

eating grass among lilies.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> Your neck is like the tower of David built in rows of stone,

with a thousand shields hanging on it,

all the shields of soldiers.

<sup>5</sup> Your two breasts are like two fawns,

twins of a gazelle,

grazing among the lilies.

### translationWords:

- like, likeness
- watchtower, tower
- David
- shield
- warrior, soldier
- deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to praise the woman.
- **neck is like** - AT: “neck is long and beautiful like.” (See: **Simile**)
- **of David** - “that David built”
- **built in rows of stone** - Women had necklaces that covered their entire necks with rows of decorations. The lover compares these rows of decorations with the rows of stone on the tower. AT: “that has many rows of stone.” (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)



- **with a thousand shields** - The lover compares the decorations of the woman's necklace with shields hanging on the tower. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a thousand shields** - "1,000 shields." (See: [Numbers](#))
- **all the shields of soldiers** - "all of the shields belong to mighty warriors"
- **like two fawns, twins of a gazelle** - The woman's breasts are beautiful, matching and soft like two baby deer or two baby gazelle. (See: [Simile](#))
- **twins** - the babies of a mother who gave birth to two babies at one time
- **gazelle** - See how you translated "gazelles" in [2:7](#).
- **grazing among the lilies** - "eating plants among the lilies." The beautiful fawns and baby gazelle are even more beautiful when lilies are surrounding them.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 4:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Until dawn tomorrow morning,

when the nighttime shadows disappear,

I will lie close to your breasts,

because they are like two hills that smell like sweet spices.

<sup>7</sup> My darling, you are completely beautiful;

your body is perfectly formed!

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Until the dawn arrives and the shadows flee away,

I will go to the mountain of myrrh

and to the hill of frankincense.

<sup>7</sup> You are beautiful in every way, my love

and there is no blemish in you.

**translationWords:**

- shadow
- myrrh
- frankincense
- blemish

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to praise the woman.
- **Until the dawn arrives and the shadows flee away** - See how you translated the line in [2:17](#) where the wording is the same as this one.
- **I will go to the mountain of myrrh and to the hill of frankincense** - The lover expresses his desire to enjoy the woman's breasts by comparing them with mountains or hills that he likes. Her breasts are round and protrude like mountains or hills. They smell sweet like myrrh and frankincense. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **I will go to the mountain ... hill of frankincense.** - These lines repeat the thought in slightly differing ways to emphasize the attractiveness of the lover's breasts. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the mountain of myrrh** - "the mountain made of myrrh" or "the mountain that has myrrh on it"
- **You are beautiful in every way** - "Every part of you is beautiful" or "All of you is beautiful"
- **my love** - See how you translated this in [1:9](#).
- **there is no blemish in you** - "you have no blemish"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 4:8

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> My darling, it is as though you were in Lebanon

far away, where I cannot reach you.

Come back to me.

It is as though you were on the top of Mount Hermon

or the nearby peaks, where I cannot go to you.

Come from the mountains, where the lions have their dens

and where the leopards live on the mountains.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Come with me from Lebanon, my bride.

Come with me from Lebanon;

come from the top of Amana,

from the top of Senir and Hermon,

from lions' dens,

from mountain dens of leopards.

### translationWords:

- Lebanon
- bride
- Mount Hermon
- lion
- leopard

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to speak to the woman.
- **Come with me ... dens of leopards** - The lover wants his bride to come with him away from a wild and dangerous place. This is a metaphor and the couple is not really on these mountains or by these dens. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **from Lebanon** - “away from Lebanon”
- **Amana** - the name of a mountain near Damascus (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **Senir** - the name of a mountain near Amana and Hermon. Some people think that this refers to the same mountain as Hermon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **dens** - places where lions and leopards live, like caves or holes in the ground

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 4:9

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> You who are most dear to me, when I see you,  
you force me to love you  
when I see you look at me, when I see a little of the jewelry that you  
wear around your neck.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> You have stolen my heart, my sister, my bride;  
you have stolen my heart,  
with just one look at me,  
with just one jewel of your necklace.

### translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [bride](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to speak to the woman.
- **have stolen my heart** - He is saying his affection and love now belong to her. AT: “have captured my love.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **my sister** - The woman is as dear to the lover as his own sister. They are not actually brother and sister. AT: “my dear” or “my darling” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **with just one look at me, with just one jewel of your necklace** - Both the woman’s eyes and her jewelry attract her lover to her.

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 4:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> My bride, your love for me is delightful!

It more delightful than wine!

The fragrance of your perfume

is more pleasing than any spice!

<sup>11</sup> When you kiss me, it is better than when I eat honey.

Your kisses are as sweet as milk mixed with honey.

The aroma of your clothes

is like the aroma of cedar trees in Lebanon.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> How beautiful is your love, my sister, my bride!

How much better is your love than wine,

and the fragrance of your perfume than any spice.

<sup>11</sup> Your lips, my bride, drip honey;

honey and milk are under your tongue;

the fragrance of your garments is like the fragrance of Lebanon.

### translationWords:

- love
- bride
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- honey, honeycomb
- like, likeness
- Lebanon

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to praise the woman.
- **How beautiful is your love** - “Your love is wonderful”
- **my sister, my bride** - See how you translated this in [4:9](#).

- **How much better is your love than wine** - These lines repeat the same idea in different words for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **How much better is your love than wine** - “Your love is much better than wine.” See how you translated this in [1:2](#).
- **the fragrance of your perfume than any spice** - “the smell of your oils is better than the smell of any spice.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **fragrance ... perfume** - See how you translated these words in [1:3](#).
- **spice** - dried plants or seeds that have a good smell or taste
- **Your lips ... under your tongue** - These lines repeat the same idea in different words for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Your lips, my bride, drip honey** - The lover thinks that the woman’s kisses are sweet like honey; or, because the words that she speaks are sweet like honey. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **honey and milk are under your tongue** - The lover thinks that the woman’s kisses are sweet like milk and honey; or, that she speaks words that are as sweet as milk and honey. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the fragrance of your garments is like the fragrance of Lebanon** - “the smell of your clothes is like the smell of Lebanon.” Many cedar trees grew in Lebanon. Cedar trees smell very good, so Lebanon would have smelled sweet and fresh.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)



## Song of Solomon 4:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> You who are most dear to me, you are like a garden that the owner keeps locked

in order that other men cannot enter it;

you are like a spring that is covered

in order that others may not drink from it.

<sup>13</sup> You are like an orchard of pomegranate trees

full of delicious fruit,

and plenty of plants that produce henna and nard spices,

<sup>14</sup> saffron and calamus and cinnamon

and many other kinds of incense,

myrrh and aloes

and many other fine spices.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> My sister, my bride is a garden locked up,

a garden locked up, a spring that is sealed.

<sup>13</sup> Your branches are a grove of pomegranate trees with choice fruits,

and of henna and nard plants,

<sup>14</sup> Spikenard and saffron,

calamus and cinnamon with all kinds of spices,

myrrh and aloes with all the finest spices.

### translationWords:

- bride
- fountain, spring
- seal, to seal
- pomegranate
- myrrh

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to praise the woman.
- **My sister, my bride** - See how you translated this in [4:9](#).
- **is a garden locked up** - “is a garden that is locked.” The lover compares the woman with a locked garden because she belongs only to him and only he can enjoy her. He might also be saying that she is still a virgin whom he has not yet enjoyed. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))
- **a spring that is sealed** - The lover compares the woman with a sealed spring for the same reasons that he compared her with a locked garden. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))
- **Your branches ... the finest spices** - The lover describes how wonderful the woman is by describing her as a garden full of wonderful things. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a grove** - a place where many trees grow together
- **with choice fruits** - “with the best kinds of fruits”
- **henna** - See how you translated this in [1:14](#).
- **nard** - See how you translated this in [1:12](#).
- **Spikenard** - See how you translated this in [4:14](#)
- **saffron** - a spice that comes from the dried parts from the yellow thread in the center of a certain flower.
- **calamus** - This is a reed with a pleasant smell that people used to make anointing oil.
- **cinnamon** - a spice made from the bark of a tree that people used for cooking
- **myrrh** - See how you translated this in [1:13](#).
- **aloes** - a type of large plant that had a very sweet smell
- **all the finest spices** - “all the best spices”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 4:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> You are like a fountain in a garden,  
like a spring of clear water  
that flows down from the mountains of Lebanon.

<sup>16</sup> I want the north wind and the south wind to come,  
and blow on my garden,  
in order that the fragrance of the spices will spread through the air.  
Similarly, I want the one who loves me to come and enjoy being close to me  
like someone comes into a garden and enjoys eating the fruit that  
grows there.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> You are a garden spring,  
a well of fresh water,  
streams flowing down from Lebanon.

<sup>16</sup> Awake, north wind; come, south wind;  
blow on my garden so that its spices may give off their fragrance.  
May my beloved come into his garden  
and eat some of its choice fruit.

### translationWords:

- fountain, spring
- Lebanon
- beloved
- fruit, fruitful

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to praise the woman.

- **You are a garden spring** - “You are a spring in a garden.” The lover describes how wonderful by comparing her with good water. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **fresh water** - water that is good to drink
- **streams flowing down from Lebanon** - Because Lebanon had mountains covered with trees, the streams from Lebanon would be clean and cool.
- **Awake ... may give off their fragrance** - The woman speaks to the north wind and the south wind as though they were people. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Awake** - “Start moving”
- **blow on my garden** - The woman refers to her body by speaking about it as a garden. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **may give off their fragrance** - “send out their good smells”
- **May my beloved ... choice fruit** - The woman is inviting her lover to enjoy her as his wife. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **choice fruit** - “wonderful fruit”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04 Translation Questions](#)

## **Song of Solomon 5 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Verses 2-7 describe a dream the woman had.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Beauty**

The woman is described as the epitome of beauty in ancient Israel. Not all cultures share the same the same standards of beauty.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphors**

In the ancient Near East, it was common to describe a woman using metaphors involving animals. In many cultures today, this can be considered offensive. Different metaphors of beauty are used in different cultures. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **“My sister, my bride”**

The woman described is not the sister of her husband. They are not related. Instead, this is a reference to a woman who is a fellow Israelite.

#### **Links:**

- [Song of Solomon 05:01 Notes](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> You who are most dear to me,

I have come to be next to you.

It will be as though I am gathering myrrh with my other spices,

eating my honey and honeycomb,

and drinking my wine and my milk.

Friends, enjoy making love;

fully enjoy all that you do with each other.

### ULB:

5 <sup>1</sup> I have come into my garden, my sister, my bride;

I have gathered my myrrh with my spice.

I have eaten my honeycomb with my honey;

I have drunk my wine with my milk.

Eat, friends;

drink and be drunk with love.

### translationWords:

- sister
- bride
- myrrh
- honey, honeycomb
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- love

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **I have come** - It is clearly the woman's lover who is speaking.

- **have come into my garden** - The man describes the woman as a garden. On the night of their wedding, the man is finally able to fully enjoy the woman. He describes this as coming into his garden. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))
- **my sister** - The man calls the woman his sister because he loves her very much like he would love his sister. AT: “the one I love.”
- **I have gathered my myrrh ... with my milk** - The man uses these images from a garden to indicate that he has been able to enjoy many different aspects of the woman.
- **spice** - plants that have a strong smell or taste

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 5:2****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> I was asleep, and I had a dream.

In it I heard my lover knocking at the door.

He said, "You who are dearer to me than my sister, my darling, my dear friend, my perfect one, my dove,

open the door for me!

My hair is wet from the dew,

from the mist that has fallen during the night."

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> I was asleep, but my heart was awake in a dream.

There is the sound of my beloved knocking and saying,

"Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled one,

for my head is wet with dew,

my hair with the night's dampness."

**translationWords:**

- heart
- dream
- beloved
- sister
- love
- dove, pigeon
- pure, purify, purification

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Here begins Part Four of the book
- **General Information:** - The young woman uses euphemisms to describe her dream so that it can be interpreted in two different ways: 1) the woman describes a dream about a night when her lover came to visit her at her house; and 2) the woman describes a dream about starting to sleep with her lover. (See: [Euphemism](#))



- **but my heart was awake** - AT: “but my mind was awake.” AT: “but my feelings were active.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Open to me** - This refers to opening a door but it can also be interpreted as a sexual request. AT: “Open the door for me” or “Open yourself to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **my sister** - A term of affection. See how you translated this in [4:9](#).
- **my love** - See how you translated this in [1:0](#).
- **my dove** - See how you translated this in [2:14](#).
- **undefiled one** - “my perfect one” or “my faithful one” or “my innocent one”
- **dew** - drops of water or mist that form during the cool of the night when the temperature drops
- **my hair with the night’s dampness** - The wet night air makes the man’s hair wet because he is standing outside.
- **my head is wet with dew, my hair with the night’s dampness** - These two lines mean basically the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> But I had already taken off my robe;

I did not want to put it on again to open the door.

I had already washed my feet;

I did not want them to get dirty again.

<sup>4</sup> The one who loves me put his hand through the opening in the door,  
and I was thrilled in my inner being that he was there.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> "I have taken off my robe; must I put it on again?"

I have washed my feet; must I get them dirty?"

<sup>4</sup> My beloved put in his hand through the opening of the door latch,  
and my heart was stirred up for him.

### translationWords:

- robe
- beloved
- heart

### translationNotes:

- **robe** - thin linen clothing that people wore on their skin
- **must I put it on again?** - AT: "I do not want to get dressed again." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I have washed my feet** - Possible interpretations are 1) the young woman had washed her feet so that she could go to bed or 2) The word "feet" is sometimes used as a euphemism to refer to a woman's private parts. AT: "I washed myself." (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **My beloved put in his hand through the opening of the door latch** - Possible interpretations are 1) the lover reaches into the house through a hole in the door in order to open the door or 2) this describes the start of the sexual act. In this context, "hand" serves as a euphemism for a man's private parts.
- **My beloved** - See how you translated this in [1:12](#).
- **door latch** - "door lock"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:5

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> I got up to open the door for him,  
but first I put a lot of myrrh on my hands.  
It was dripping from my fingers  
while I unlatched the bolt.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> I got up to open the door for my beloved;  
my hands were dripping with myrrh,  
my fingers with moist myrrh,  
on the door handle.

### translationWords:

- [beloved](#)
- [myrrh](#)

### translationNotes:

- **I got up to open the door for my beloved** - Possible meanings are 1) the young woman got out of bed in order to let her beloved into the house or 2) “I prepared myself in order to open up myself sexually to my beloved.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **my hands ... my fingers** - The words “hands” and “fingers” likely refer to the genitals of a woman.
- **with moist myrrh** - “with liquid myrrh”

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:6

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> I opened the door for the man who loves me,  
     but he left.  
 He had turned away and was gone!  
     I was very disappointed.  
 I searched for him, but I could not find him;  
     I called him, but he did not answer.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> I opened the door for my beloved,  
 but my beloved had turned and gone.  
 My heart sank; I became despondent.  
 I looked for him, but I did not find him;  
 I called him, but he did not answer me.

### translationWords:

- **beloved**
- **turn, turn away, turn back**
- **heart**
- **call, calling, called, call out**

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to describe her dream.
- **I opened the door for my beloved** - AT: "I opened myself to my beloved." (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **my beloved** - See how you translated this in **1:13**.
- **My heart sank; I became despondent** - "My soul left, when he spoke." AT: "When he spoke, I felt like I had died." (See: **Idiom** and **Metaphor**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:7

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> The city watchmen saw me while they were walking around the city.

They beat me and wounded me

because they thought I was a prostitute;

those men who were guarding the city walls took my robe.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> The watchmen who went about the city found me;

they struck me and wounded me;

the guards on the walls took away my cloak from me.

### translationWords:

- [watch, watchman](#)

### translationNotes:

- **The watchmen** - those who watch and guard the city at night
- **found me** - The word “me” refers to the young woman.
- **struck me** - “beat me” or “hit me”
- **wounded me** - “injured me”
- **the guards on the walls** - “the men who guard the walls”
- **cloak** - an outdoor overgarment that people wore over their other clothing on their upper body when they went out in public.

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 5:8****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> You young women of Jerusalem,

I want you to take an oath  
that if you see the man who loves me,  
you will tell him that I want him so much that I feel sick.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> I want you to promise, daughters of Jerusalem,  
that if you find my beloved,  
tell him I am sick because of my love for him.

**translationWords:**

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [love](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **I want you to promise, daughters of Jerusalem** - See how you translated “I want you to promise, daughters of Jerusalem,” in [2:7](#).
- **sick because of my love for him** - Her love is so strong that she feels sick. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)



## Song of Solomon 5:9

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> You who are the fairest among women,

why do you think that the one who loves you is better than other men?

In what way is he better than other men?

Why do you want us to swear that we will tell him that?

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> How is your beloved better than another beloved man,  
you who are beautiful among women?

Why is your beloved better than another beloved,  
that you ask us to take an oath like this?

### translationWords:

- [beloved](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)

### translationNotes:

- **you who are beautiful among women** - See how you translated “most beautiful of women” in [1:8](#).
- **Why is your beloved better** - “What makes your beloved better”
- **that you ask us to take an oath like this** - “and causes you to have us take this oath”
- **an oath like this** - See the oath in [5:8](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> It is because the man who loves me is handsome and healthy,  
outstanding among other men.

<sup>11</sup> His head is beautiful, like purest gold;  
his hair is wavy  
and as black as a raven.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> My beloved is radiant and ruddy,  
outstanding among ten thousand.

<sup>11</sup> His head is the purest gold;  
his hair is curly and as black as a raven.

### translationWords:

- [beloved](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

### translationNotes:

- **is radiant and ruddy** - It is implied that the woman is describing the skin of her beloved. AT: “has radiant and ruddy skin”
- **radiant** - “is completely healthy” or “is pure.” The beloved has skin that does not have any problems.
- **ruddy** - a healthy color of the skin that is brownish red
- **outstanding among ten thousand** - “the best of 10,000.” AT: “better than anyone else” or “no one else is like him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **His head is the purest gold** - The beloved’s head is as precious to the woman as the purest gold. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a raven** - a bird with very black feathers

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)

- Song of Solomon 05 General Notes
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:12

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> His eyes as gentle as doves

along the streams;

the white parts of his eyes are as white as milk,

with what resembles jewels inlaid in them.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> His eyes are like doves beside streams of water,

washed in milk, mounted like jewels.

### translationWords:

- [like, likeness](#)
- [dove, pigeon](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to describe her beloved.
- **His eyes are like doves** - See how you translated “your eyes are like doves” in [1:15](#).
- **beside streams of water** - The woman might be using this image to say that her beloved’s eyes are moist like the streams of water. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **washed in milk** - “washing themselves in milk.” The doves represent the beloved’s pupils. These are surrounded by the rest of his eyes, which are as white as milk. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **mounted like jewels** - His eyes are so beautiful that they look like jewels that a craftsman has carefully put in place. (See: [Simile](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:13

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> His cheeks are like a garden full of spice trees  
 that produce sweet-smelling perfume.  
 His lips are like lilies  
 that have myrrh dripping from them.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> His cheeks are like beds of spices,  
 yielding aromatic scents.  
 His lips are lilies, dripping myrrh.

### translationWords:

- [like, likeness](#)
- [myrrh](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to describe her beloved.
- **His cheeks ... aromatic scents** - This explains that his cheeks are like beds of spices because they both give off wonderful smells. (See: [Simile](#))
- **beds of spices** - a garden or part of a garden where people grow spices
- **yielding aromatic scents** - “that give off wonderful smells.”
- **His lips are lilies** - The woman probably compares his lips with lilies because they are beautiful and smell wonderful. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **lilies** - See how you translated this in [2:16](#).
- **dripping myrrh** - “that drip with the best myrrh.” His lips are moist and have a wonderful smell like myrrh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:14

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> His arms are like gold rods that have rounded ends,  
and that are decorated with precious stones.  
His body is like ivory  
that is decorated with sapphires.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> His arms are rounded gold set with jewels;  
his abdomen is ivory covered with sapphires.

### translationWords:

- [gold](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to describe her beloved.
- **His arms are rounded gold set with jewels** - “His arms are cylinders of gold that have jewels all over them.” The woman uses this image to say that his arms are beautiful and precious. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his abdomen is ivory covered with sapphires** - “his belly is smooth ivory that has sapphires all over it.” The woman uses this image to say that his belly is beautiful and precious. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **ivory** - the white tusk or tooth of an animal that is similar to bone. People use ivory to make smooth and shiny pieces of art.
- **sapphires** - Sapphire is a kind of clear, valuable stone. This kind of sapphire probably has a yellow or golden color.

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:15

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> His legs are like marble columns

that are set in bases made of pure gold.

He is majestic, like the mountains of Lebanon,  
like delightful cedar trees.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> His legs are pillars of marble, set on bases of pure gold;  
his appearance is like Lebanon, choice as the cedars.

### translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)
- [gold](#)
- [like, likeness](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [cedar](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to describe her beloved.
- **His legs are pillars of marble** - His legs are strong and beautiful like marble pillars. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **marble** - a very strong stone that has many different colors and people and polish it to make it very smooth
- **set on bases of pure gold** - AT: “that have bases of pure gold as their foundation.” His feet are valuable and precious like bases of pure gold that support the pillars of marble. (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **his appearance is like Lebanon** - “he looks like Lebanon.” Lebanon was a very beautiful area with many mountains and trees. (See: [Simile](#))
- **choice as the cedars** - “as desirable as the cedars” or “excellent like the cedars

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 5:16

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> His kisses are very sweet;

he is completely attractive.

You young women of Jerusalem,

this is why the man who loves me is better than all other men.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> His mouth is most sweet;

he is completely lovely.

This is my beloved, and this is my friend,

daughters of Jerusalem.

### translationWords:

- [beloved](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to describe her beloved.
- **His mouth is most sweet** - The woman uses this image to describe the sweet kisses of her beloved or the sweet words that he says. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he is completely lovely** - “every part of is lovely” or “all of him is lovely”
- **This is my beloved, and this is my friend** - The word “This” refers to the person that the woman has just finished describing. You could also translate this phrase as “That is what my beloved is like, and that is what my friend is like.”
- **daughters of Jerusalem** - See how you translated this in [1:5](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 05 Translation Questions](#)



## **Song of Solomon 6 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Beauty**

The woman is described as the epitome of beauty in ancient Israel. Not all cultures share the same the same standards of beauty.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Metaphors**

In the ancient Near East, it was common to describe a woman using metaphors involving animals. In many cultures today, this can be considered offensive. Different metaphors of beauty are used in different cultures. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Song of Solomon 06:01 Notes](#)

**Song of Solomon 6:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> You who are the most beautiful of the women,  
    where has the one who loves you gone?  
If you tell us which direction he went,  
    we will go with you to search for him.

**ULB:**

6 <sup>1</sup> Where has your beloved gone,  
most beautiful among women?  
In what direction has your beloved gone,  
so that we may seek him with you?

**translationWords:**

- [beloved](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **In what direction has your beloved gone** - “Which way did your beloved go”
- **most beautiful among women** - See how you translated this in [1:8](#).
- **so that we may seek him with you** - AT: “Tell us, so that we can look for him with you.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 6:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> The one who loves me has come to me, I, who am like his garden,

He has come to enjoy my charms,  
to enjoy cuddling embracing me  
and kissing my lips, which are like lilies.

<sup>3</sup> I belong to the one who loves me, and the one who loves me belongs to me.

He has pleasure in kissing my lips,  
like sheep enjoy grazing.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> My beloved has gone down to his garden,  
to the beds of spices,  
to graze in the garden and to gather lilies.

<sup>3</sup> I am my beloved's, and my beloved is mine;  
he grazes among the lilies with pleasure.

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **My beloved has gone down to his garden** - See the explanation of this image in [5:1](#).
- **to the beds of spices** - See how you translated “beds of spices” in [5:13](#). The beloved has come to enjoy the physical attractions of the woman which are wonderful like spices. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to graze in the garden and to gather lilies** - The woman uses these images to indicate that her beloved is delighting in her. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **graze** - See how you translated “he grazes” in [2:16](#).
- **to gather lilies** - “to pick lilies”
- **lilies** - See how you translated this in [2:16](#).
- **I am my beloved's, and my beloved is mine** - See how you translated “My beloved is mine, and I am his” in [2:16](#).
- **he grazes among the lilies with pleasure** - See how you translated this in [2:16](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 6:4****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> My darling, you are beautiful,

as Tirzah the capital city of Israel and Jerusalem the capital city of Judah are beautiful;

you make me tremble, just as if I had seen a great army approach.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> You are as beautiful as Tirzah, my love,

as lovely as Jerusalem,

as awe-inspiring as an army with its banners.

**translationWords:**

- [Tirzah](#)
- [love](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Here begins Part Five of the book
- **as beautiful as Tirzah, my love, as lovely as Jerusalem** - The lover compares the woman's beauty and pleasantness with beautiful and pleasant cities. (See: [Simile](#))
- **lovely** - See how you translated this in [1:5](#).
- **as awe-inspiring as an army with its banners** - The beauty of the woman is so powerful that it makes the lover feel helpless, as if an army were approaching him.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 6:5****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Stop looking at me like that,

because your eyes excite me very much.

Your long black hair moves from side to side like a flock of black goats  
moving down the slopes of Mount Gilead.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Turn your eyes away from me,  
for they overwhelm me.

Your hair is like a flock of goats  
going down from the slopes of Mount Gilead.

**translationWords:**

- [flock, herd](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [Gilead](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to praise the woman.
- **overwhelm me** - “terrify me.” The eyes of the woman are so beautiful that it makes the lover feel overwhelmed and afraid because he cannot resist their power.
- **Your hair ... from the slopes of Mount Gilead** - See how you translated “Your hair ... from Mount Gilead” in [4:1](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 6:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Your teeth are very white

like a flock of sheep whose wool has just been shorn  
and have come up from being washed in a stream.

You have all of your teeth on both sides;

none of them is missing.

<sup>7</sup> Beneath your veil,

your cheeks are like the halves of a pomegranate.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> Your teeth are like a flock of ewes  
coming up from the washing place.

Each one has a twin,

and none among them is bereaved.

<sup>7</sup> Your cheeks are like pomegranate halves  
behind your veil.

### translationWords:

- [flock, herd](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [pomegranate](#)
- [veil](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to praise the woman.
- **Your cheeks are like pomegranate halves behind your veil** - See how you translated this in [4:3](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 6:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Even if a king had 60 queens and 80 concubines

and more young women than anyone can count,

<sup>9</sup> none of them would be like my dove, who is perfect,

you who are your mother's only daughter,

whom your mother considers to be very precious.

Other young women who see you say that you are fortunate,

and the queens and concubines recognize that you are very beautiful.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> There are sixty queens, eighty concubines,

and young women without number.

<sup>9</sup> My dove, my undefiled, is the only one;

she is the special daughter of her mother;

she is the favorite one of the woman who bore her.

The daughters of my countrymen saw her and called her blessed;

the queens and the concubines saw her also, and they praised her:

**translationWords:**

- queen
- concubine
- dove, pigeon
- call, calling, called, call out
- bless, blessed, blessing
- praise

**translationNotes:**

- **There are sixty queens, eighty concubines** - "There are 60 queens, 80 concubines." (See: Numbers)



- **young women without number** - The words, “without number” means that no one can count them. AT: “multitudes of young women” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **My dove, my undefiled** - See how you translated “my dove, my undefiled one” in [5:2](#).
- **is the only one** - “is unique” or “is one of a kind.” The lover is contrasting the woman with all the other women. Although there are very many excellent women, this woman stands out as unique among the rest.
- **she is the special daughter of her mother** - “she is her mother’s unique daughter” or “she is her mother’s daughter that is one of a kind”
- **the woman who bore her** - “the woman who gave birth to her.” This phrase refers to her mother.
- **and called her blessed** - “and declared that things had gone especially well for her” or “said that she was fortunate”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 6:10

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Who is this who looks like the dawn,  
who is as beautiful to look at as the moon,  
who is an endless mystery?

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> "Who is this who appears like the dawn,  
as beautiful as the moon,  
as bright as the sun,  
as awe-inspiring as an army with its banners?"

### translationWords:

- [like, likeness](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - What the queens and the concubines said about the young woman. However, some versions think that the woman's lover is speaking in this verse also.
- **Who is this who appears like the dawn** - They are using this question to say that they think the young woman is amazing. AT: "This is an amazing woman! She comes into view like the dawn." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **who appears like the dawn** - AT: "she comes into view like the dawn." The lover uses this image to say that the woman is as beautiful and as majestic as the dawn when it begins to shine. (See: [Simile](#))
- **as awe-inspiring as an army with its banners** - The beauty of the woman is so powerful that it makes the other women feel helpless, as if an army were approaching them. See how you translated this in [6:4](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 6:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> I went down to some walnut trees

to look at the new plants that were growing in the valley.

I wanted to see if the grapevines had budded

and if the pomegranate trees were blooming.

<sup>12</sup> I was as happy as if

I were riding in a chariot belonging to a prince.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> I went down into the grove of nut trees

to see the young growth in the valley,

to see whether the vines had budded,

and whether the pomegranates were in bloom.

<sup>12</sup> I was so happy that I felt

I was riding in the chariot of a prince.

**translationWords:**

- vine
- pomegranate
- chariot
- prince, princess

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The lover finishes speaking to himself.
- **grove** - See how you translated this in [4:13](#).
- **young growth** - “young plants” or “new shoots”
- **had budded** - “had grown their buds.” Buds are the small round parts of plants which open up into flowers.
- **were in bloom** - “were opening their flowers”
- **I was so happy that I felt I was riding in the chariot of a prince** - The lover uses this image to express how happy he is. (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 6:13

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> You who are the perfect one,  
    come back to us, in order that I may see you!  
Why do you want to look at me, the one who is perfect,  
    dancing between two rows of dancers?

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> Turn back, turn back, you perfect woman;  
turn back, turn back so that I may gaze on you.  
Why do you gaze on me, the perfect woman,  
as if I were dancing between two rows of dancers?

### translationWords:

- [perfect](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Turn back, turn back** - “Come back, come back.” This is repeated for emphasis.
- **gaze** - look intently at something for a time
- **as if I were dancing between two rows of dancers** - It would be a wonderful thing to see the woman dancing with the other dancers. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 7 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Beauty

The woman is described as the epitome of beauty in ancient Israel. Not all cultures share the same the same standards of beauty.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Similes

There are many similes in this chapter. Their purpose is to describe the beauty of the woman. (See: [Simile](#))

#### Links:

- [Song of Solomon 07:01 Notes](#)

## Song of Solomon 7:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> You, the daughter of a prince,  
     have lovely feet in your sandals.  
 Your curved hips are like jewels  
     that have been made by a skilled craftsman.

### ULB:

7 <sup>1</sup> How beautiful your feet appear in your sandals, prince's daughter!  
 The curves of your thighs are like jewels,  
 the work of the hands of a master craftsman.

### translationWords:

- [sandal](#)
- [prince, princess](#)

### translationNotes:

- **How beautiful your feet appear in your sandals** - It is implied by continuing from [6:13](#) that the woman's lover is describing her as she dances. AT: "Your feet are so very beautiful in your sandals as you dance." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **prince's daughter** - Though the woman was not born into a royal family, the way she looks and acts cause her to seem to be the daughter of a prince. AT: "you who have a noble character" or "you who are elegant." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The curves of your thighs are like jewels** - The shape of the woman's thighs are like a beautiful precious stone which a skilled workman carved into the perfect shape. AT: "The curves of your thighs are beautiful like the beautiful curves of jewel that a skill craftsman made." (See: [Simile](#))
- **your thighs** - The word "thighs" refers to the hips of a woman and the part of her legs that is above her knee.

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 7:2

### UDB:

<sup>2</sup> Your navel is like a round bowl

that I hope will always be full of wine mixed with spices.

Your waist is like a pile of wheat

with lilies growing around it.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> Your navel is like a round bowl;

may it never lack mixed wine.

Your belly is like a mound of wheat

encircled with lilies.

### translationWords:

- like, likeness
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- wheat

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman's lover continues describing the one he loves.
- **Your navel is like a round bowl** - The woman's navel is perfectly shaped like a bowl. AT: "Your belly button is shaped perfectly like a round bowl." (See: **Simile**)
- **navel** - the indented spot on the stomach, which is the scar left from the cord that attached a baby to its mother
- **may it never lack mixed wine** - People used large bowls to mix wine with water or snow for a feast. People enjoyed the taste of wine at a feast. AT: "may I always enjoy its beauty" or "may people always rejoice in its beauty." (See: **Metaphor** and **Litotes**)
- **Your belly is like a mound of wheat** - People thought that the color of wheat was the most beautiful color of skin and that the round piles of wheat were beautiful. AT: "Your belly has a beautiful color and is round like a pile of wheat."
- **a mound of wheat** - This is a pile of the grains of wheat after people thresh and winnow the wheat.
- **encircled with lilies** - The beautiful flowers make the pile of wheat seem even more beautiful. AT: "that has lilies all around it." (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **lilies** - a type of large flowers



**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 7:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Your breasts are as delicate as two young twin deer.

<sup>4</sup> Your neck is like a tower made of ivory.

Your eyes sparkle the pools in the city of Heshbon,  
near the Bath Rabbim Gate.

Your nose is long, like the tower in Lebanon  
that faces Damascus.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Your two breasts are like two fawns,  
twins of a gazelle.

<sup>4</sup> Your neck is like a tower of ivory;  
your eyes like the pools in Heshbon  
by the gate of Bath Rabbim.

Your nose is like the tower in Lebanon  
that looks toward Damascus.

**translationWords:**

- watchtower, tower
- Lebanon
- Damascus

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The young woman's lover continues describing the one he loves.
- **Your two breasts are like two fawns, twins of a gazelle** - See how you translated this in 5:5.
- **Your neck is like a tower of ivory** - The lover compares her neck to a tower made of ivory. (Simile: **Simile**)
- **ivory** - the white tusk or tooth of an animal that is similar to bone. People use ivory to make art and to make things look beautiful.
- **eyes like the pools in Heshbon** - AT: "your eyes are clear and sparkle like the pools of water in Heshbon."

- **Heshbon** - the name of a city east of the Jordan River. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Bath Rabbim** - the name of a city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **nose is like the tower in Lebanon** - Her nose is long and straight just like the tower is tall and straight.
- **that looks toward Damascus** - “that allows people to look toward Damascus”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 7:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Your head is majestic like Mount Carmel.

Your long hair is shiny and black;  
it is as though I, your king, am captured by your tresses.

<sup>6</sup> You whom I love, you who have many charming features that attract me,  
you are very beautiful and pleasant.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Your head on you is like Carmel;  
the hair on your head is dark purple.  
The king is held captive by its tresses.

<sup>6</sup> How beautiful and lovely you are,  
beloved one, with your delights!

### translationWords:

- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- purple
- king
- captive, captivity
- beloved

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues to describe the one he loves.
- **head on you is like Carmel** - The woman is compared to Mount Carmel that rises up above everything else around it. (See: **Simile**)
- **dark purple** - Possible translations are 1) “dark black” or 2) “dark red.”
- **The king is held captive by its tresses** - AT: “Your hair that hangs down is so beautiful that the king is not able to stop admiring it.” (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)
- **tresses** - the clusters of hair that hang down from a woman’s head. You can also translate this word as “locks” or “curls” or “ringlets.”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 7:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> You are stately like a palm tree,

and your breasts are like grape clusters.

<sup>8</sup> I said to myself, "I will climb that palm tree

and take hold of those clusters of dates."

I want your breasts to be also like clusters of grapes that I can feel;

I want your breath to be like the sweet fragrance of apricots.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Your height is like that of a date palm tree,

and your breasts like clusters of fruit.

<sup>8</sup> I thought, "I want to climb that palm tree;

I will take hold of its branches."

May your breasts be like clusters of grapes,

and may the fragrance of your nose be like apricots.

### translationWords:

- palm
- fruit, fruitful
- grape

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover describes what he would like to do with the one he loves.
- **Your height is like that of a date palm tree** - "You stand up like a date palm tree." The woman is tall, stands straight, and is attractive just like a date palm. (See: **Simile**)
- **date palm tree** - a tall, straight tree that produces a sweet, brown, and sticky fruit that grows in groups
- **your breasts like clusters of fruit** - The dates on a palm tree grow in very large and beautiful bunches that hang down from the tree.
- **I want to climb ... its branches** - The man wants to hold the woman. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **May your breasts be like clusters of grapes** - The man wants to touch her breasts that are firm but soft just like grapes that are full of their juice.

- **may the fragrance of your nose be like apricots** - “may the breath coming from your nose smell sweet like apricots.”
- **apricots** - The word “apricots” refers to tasty, yellow-colored, sweet pieces of fruit.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 7:9

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> I want your kisses to be like very good wine.

When I kiss you, the woman who loves me,

I want it to be as if it was wine flowing over our mouths and teeth.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> May your mouth be like the best wine,

flowing smoothly to my beloved,

gliding over our lips and teeth.

### translationWords:

- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [beloved](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The lover continues describing what he would like to do with the one he loves.
- **May your mouth be like the best wine** - AT: "I want to taste your mouth like the best wine. (See: [Simile](#))
- **flowing smoothly to my beloved** - "that flows smoothly for the one I love." The lover enjoys the smooth kisses of the woman.
- **gliding over our lips and teeth** - "that flows over my lips and teeth" or "slides over our lips and teeth."

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)



## Song of Solomon 7:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> I belong to the man who loves me,  
and he desires me.

<sup>11</sup> You who love me, let us go to the countryside,  
and sleep in a village somewhere.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> I am my beloved's,  
and he desires me.

<sup>11</sup> Come, my beloved, let us go out into the countryside;  
let us spend the night in the villages.

### translationWords:

### translationNotes:

- **I am my beloved's** - See how you translated "I belong to my lover" in [6:3](#).
- **and he desires me** - "and he is passionate about me" or "and he wants me"

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 7:12

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> And let us go early to the vineyards  
to see if the grapevines have budded  
and if there are blossoms on them that have opened,  
and see if the pomegranate trees are blooming,  
and there I will allow you to make love to me.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Let us rise early to go to the vineyards;  
let us see whether the vines have budded,  
whether their blossoms have opened,  
and whether the pomegranates are in flower.  
There I will give you my love.

### translationWords:

- [vineyard](#)
- [vine](#)
- [pomegranate](#)
- [love](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The woman continues to speak to her beloved.
- **rise early** - “get up early” or “wake up early”
- **have budded** - “are in the beginning of blooming”
- **blossoms** - flowers when they are open
- **are in flower** - “have flowers open on the plant”
- **I will give you my love** - “I will show you my love” or “I will make love with you”

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 7:13

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> The mandrake plants are producing a fragrant odor,  
 and we are surrounded by delightful pleasures,  
 new ones and old ones,  
 pleasures that I have been saving to give to you, the man who loves  
 me.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> The mandrakes give off their fragrance;  
 at the door where we are staying are all sorts of choice fruits, new and old,  
 that I have stored up for you, my beloved.

### translationWords:

- [beloved](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The woman continues to speak to her beloved.
- **mandrakes** - This is the name of plants that give off a strong but pleasant scent. The scent is slightly intoxicating and stimulating which increases the desire to make love. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **give off their fragrance** - “produce their scent”
- **at the door** - It is implied that the doors belong to their house. AT: “above the entrances of our house” or “by the doors of our house.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **are all sorts of choice fruits, new and old** - “is every kind of the best fruit, both old fruit and new fruit”
- **stored up for you** - “saved for you” or “protected for you”

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 8 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Kisses

The kisses in this chapter are a type of kiss that was only done between a husband and a wife. It is an intimate kiss. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Passion

The chapter describes the passion that can exist between a husband and a wife. This is the feeling of strong or uncontrollable desire for another person.

#### Links:

- [Song of Solomon 08:01 Notes](#)

## Song of Solomon 8:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> I wish that everyone knew that we love each other, just as they all know that I have a brother,  
my own brother, who nursed at my mother's breasts.

Then whenever I met you outside, I could kiss you,  
and no one would criticize me.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> <sup>1</sup> I wish that you were like my brother,  
who nursed at my mother's breasts.

Then whenever I met you outside, I could kiss you,  
and no one would despise me.

### translationWords:

- [kiss](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Poetry](#) and [Parallelism](#)
- **you were like my brother** - The woman wishes that she could show her lover her affection in public as she could do her brother. She is not saying that a woman is allowed to make love with her brother. (See: [Simile](#))
- **you outside** - “you in public”
- **I could kiss you** - A woman would probably kiss her brother on his cheek in order to greet him.
- **would despise me** - “would make me feel ashamed”

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 8:2-3

### UDB:

<sup>2</sup> No one would object if I led you to our mother's house,

to where our mother, who taught me so many things, lives.

I would like to take you to our mother's house so I could make love to you there.

That would be as delightful as juice squeezed from pomegranates, as wine mixed with spices.

<sup>3</sup> Oh yes! He will put his left arm under my head,

and he will hold me close with his right arm.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> I would lead you and bring you into my mother's house,  
and you would teach me.

I would give you spiced wine to drink  
and some of the juice of my pomegranates.

<sup>3</sup> His left hand is under my head  
and his right hand embraces me.

### translationWords:

- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- pomegranate

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to speak to her lover.
- **I would lead you and bring you into my mother's house** - If the lover were her brother, she could bring him to the family home. This was normal in that culture and is still today in some.

- **and you would teach me** - This could also be translated as “and she would teach me.” Because the woman is inexperienced in making love, she is imagining that her lover or her mother would teach her how to make love. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I would give you spiced wine to drink and some of the juice of my pomegranates** - The woman uses these images to say that she will give herself to her lover and make love with him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **spiced wine** - “wine with spices” or “wine that has spices in it” This represents the intoxicating power of love-making. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **juice of my pomegranates** - The woman represents her own sweet liquid with the extract of pomegranates. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **His left hand ... embraces me** - See how you translated “His left hand is under my head, and his right hand embraces me” in [2:6](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 8:4****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> I want you to promise me, you women of Jerusalem,  
that you will not disturb us while we are making love  
until we are ready to stop.”

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> I want you to swear, daughters of Jerusalem’s men,  
that you will not interrupt our lovemaking  
until it is over.

**translationWords:**

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **I want you ... Jerusalem’s men** - See how you translated this in [2:7](#).
- **that you will ... until it is over** - See how you translated this in [2:7](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)



## Song of Solomon 8:5

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Who is that woman who is coming up from the wilderness,  
     the woman who is leaning on the man who loves her?  
 I woke you up when you were under the apricot tree  
     at the place where your mother conceived you,  
     the place where she gave birth to you.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Who is this who is coming up from the wilderness,  
 leaning on her beloved?  
  
 I awakened you under the apricot tree;  
 there your mother conceived you;  
 there she gave birth to you, she delivered you.

### translationWords:

- desert, wilderness
- beloved
- conceive, conception

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here begins Part Six of the book, the final part
- **Who is this who is coming up** - AT: “Look at this amazing woman as she comes up.” See how you translated a similar phrase in 6:10. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I awakened you** - “I woke you up” or “I aroused you”
- **the apricot tree** - See how you translated this in 2:3.
- **there** - under the apricot tree
- **she delivered you** - “she bore you”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 8:6

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Keep me close to you,  
like a seal on your heart,  
or like a bracelet on your arm.  
Our love for each other is as powerful as death;  
it is as strong as the grave.  
It is as though our love for each other bursts into flames  
and burns like a hot fire.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> Set me as a seal over your heart,  
like a seal on your arm,  
for love is as strong as death.  
Passionate devotion is as unrelenting as Sheol;  
its flames burst out; it is a blazing flame,  
a flame hotter than any other fire.

### translationWords:

- seal, to seal
- heart
- like, likeness
- love
- death, die, dead
- hades, sheol
- fire

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to speak to her lover.
- **Set me as a seal over your heart, like a seal on your arm** - Possible meanings are 1) Because seals were very important, people kept them around their neck or on their hand constant. The woman wants to be with her lover constantly like a seal. or 2) A seal shows who owns

the thing that has the seal on it. The woman wants herself as the seal on her lover's heart and arm to show that all of his thoughts, emotions, and actions belong to her. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

- **for love is as strong as death** - Death is very strong because it overcomes even the most powerful people of the world. (See: [Simile](#))
- **as unrelenting as Sheol** - "as tough as Sheol." Sheol never allows people to come back to life after they have already died. Love is as persistent as Sheol because it never changes. (See: [Simile](#))
- **its flames burst out ... any other fire** - Love is very powerful like fire. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **burst out** - "burn suddenly"

#### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Song of Solomon 8:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Nothing can stop us from loving each other,

not even a flood.

If a man tried to cause a woman to love him by saying he would give her everything that is in his house,

she would refuse.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Surging waters cannot quench love,

nor can floods sweep it away.

If a man gave all the possessions in his house for love,

the offer would utterly be despised.

**translationWords:**

- love
- flood
- possess, possession

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The young woman continues to speak to her lover.
- **Surging waters cannot quench love** - Love is so strong that it is like a fire that is so hot that it cannot be put out even with an ocean full of water. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **Surging waters** - “Oceans of water” or “Huge amounts of water”
- **cannot quench** - “cannot extinguish” or “cannot put out”
- **nor can floods sweep it away** - Love never changes and always stays the same so it is like something that not even a powerful flood can move. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **floods** - In Israel, water from the rain flows into deep and narrow valleys. This creates a flood of water so powerful that it can move huge boulders and trees. Even today, floods sometimes sweep away very strong bridges.
- **sweep it away** - “carry it away” or “wash it away”
- **If a man gave ... the offer would utterly be despised** - “Even if a man ... he would be utterly despised.” (See: **Hypothetical Situations**)
- **all the possessions in his house** - “everything he owns”

- **for love** - “in order to get love” or “in order to buy love”
- **the offer would utterly be despised** - “people would completely despise him” or “people would harshly ridicule him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 8:8

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> We have a younger sister,

and her breasts are not large yet.

So this is what we should do for her on the day that we promise some young man that he can marry her:

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> We have a little sister,

and her breasts have not yet grown.

What can we do for our sister

on the day when she will be promised in marriage?

### translationWords:

- [promise](#)

### translationNotes:

- **little sister** - “young sister”
- **she will be promised in marriage** - AT: “a man comes and wants to marry her.” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 8:9

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> If her chest is as flat as a wall,

we will decorate it by putting silver jewels that are like towers on her.

If she is as flat as a door,

we will decorate her with bits of cedar wood.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> If she is a wall,

we will build on her a tower of silver.

If she is a door,

we will adorn her with boards of cedar.

### translationWords:

- [watchtower, tower](#)
- [silver](#)
- [cedar](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The young woman's brothers continue to speak among themselves.
- **If she is a wall ... boards of cedar** - Because her breasts are small, she has a flat chest like a flat wall or a flat door. The brothers decide to give her decorations in order to help their sister look more beautiful. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will adorn her** - "will decorate her"

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)



## Song of Solomon 8:10

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> My chest was previously flat like a wall,  
but now my breasts are big like towers.  
So I am delightful to my beloved.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> I was a wall, but my breasts are now like fortress towers;  
so I am completely mature in his eyes.

### translationWords:

- [like, likeness](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [watchtower, tower](#)

### translationNotes:

- **my breasts are now like fortress towers** - The woman's breasts are tall like towers. (See: [Simile](#))
- **so I am completely mature in his eyes** - Her beloved now sees that she is a fully-developed woman, and that pleases him. AT: "I am delightful to my beloved" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **in his eyes** - Here "his eyes" refers to her lover. AT: "to him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 8:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> King Solomon had a vineyard at Baal Hamon,

and he rented it to people for them to farm it.

He required each one to pay him one thousand pieces of silver each year for the grapes that they harvested.

<sup>12</sup> But my body is like my own vineyard,

and you, my lover whom I to call “Solomon,” I am giving it to you.

You do not need to pay me a thousand pieces of silver to enjoy my body,

but I will give two hundred pieces of silver to those who take care of me.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Solomon had a vineyard at Baal Hamon.

He leased the vineyard to those who would maintain it.

Each one was to bring a thousand shekels of silver for its fruit.

<sup>12</sup> My vineyard is my very own;

the thousand shekels belong to you, my dear Solomon,

and the two hundred shekels are for those who maintain it for its fruit.

### translationWords:

- Solomon
- vineyard
- silver
- fruit, fruitful

### translationNotes:

- **Baal Hamon** - This is the name of a town in the northern part of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#)).
- **leased the vineyard** - “rented out the vineyard”
- **to those who would maintain it** - “to people who would take care of it”
- **Each one was to bring a thousand shekels of silver for its fruit** - AT: “Each man was supposed to give Solomon a thousand shekels as payment for the fruit of the vineyard.” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

- **to bring a thousand shekels of silver** - “to bring 1,000 shekels of silver.” (See: [Biblical Money and Numbers](#))
- **My vineyard is my very own** - “I am in charge of my own vineyard.” The woman refers to herself as a vineyard as in [1:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the thousand shekels belong to you, my dear Solomon** - The woman freely gives the profit of the vineyard to Solomon even though it belongs to her and she can give it to whomever she wants.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 8:13

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> You are staying in the gardens,  
my friends are listening to your voice;  
so allow me to hear it, too!

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> You who live in the gardens,  
my companions are listening for your voice;  
let me be the one to hear it as well.

### translationWords:

- [companion](#)

### translationNotes:

- **for your voice** - “to your voice”
- **let me be the one to hear it as well** - “let me hear it.” The word “it” refers to the woman’s voice.

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Song of Solomon 8:14

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> You who love me, come to me quickly;  
run to me like a gazelle or young deer,  
because I am as delightful as hills of spices.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Hurry, my beloved,  
and be like a gazelle or a young stag  
on the mountains of spices.

### translationWords:

- [beloved](#)

### translationNotes:

- **be like a gazelle or a young stag** - See how you translated this in [2:17](#).
- **the mountains of spices** - “the mountains that have spices all over them.” The woman uses this imagery to invite her lover to enjoy her. See how the lover uses the imagery of a mountain of myrrh and a hill of frankincense in [4:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to The Song of Solomon](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 General Notes](#)
- [Song of Solomon 08 Translation Questions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Song of Solomon 1

Q? Who is the writer of Song of Songs?

A. Solomon is the writer of Song of Songs. [1:1]

---

Q? For what does the young woman ask her lover to do?

A. The young woman asks her lover to kiss her with the kisses of his mouth. [1:2]

---

Q? What does the young woman say is better than wine?

A. The young woman says her lover's love is better than wine. [1:2]

---

Q? What does the young woman say her lover's name is like?

A. The young woman says his name is like flowing perfume. [1:3]

---

Q? Where has the king brought the young woman?

A. The king has brought the young woman into his rooms. [1:4]

---

Q? How does the young woman describe her skin?

A. The young woman describes her skin as dark but lovely like tents of Kedar, like curtains of Solomon. [1:5]

---

Q? Why does she not want the other women to stare at her?

A. She does not want the other women to stare at her because her skin is scorched. [1:6]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the young woman's brothers do when they were angry with her?

**A.** The young woman's brothers made her a keeper of the vineyards. [1:6]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What does the woman ask her lover?

**A.** She asks him where he feeds his flock and where he rests his flock at noontime. [1:7]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How does her lover say the young woman can find him?

**A.** He tells her to follow the tracks of his flock to the shepherds' tents. [1:8]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** To what does the young woman's lover compare her?

**A.** He compares her to a mare among Pharaoh's chariots. [1:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What does her lover say is on her cheeks and neck?

**A.** He says ornaments are on her cheeks and strings of jewels are on her neck. [1:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What does her lover say he will make for her?

**A.** He says he will make for her gold ornaments with silver studs. [1:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where was the king lying while the woman was speaking to herself?

**A.** The king was lying on his couch while the woman was speaking to herself. [1:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where does her beloved spend the night?

**A.** Her beloved spends the night lying between her breasts. [1:13]

---

**Q?** To what does the young woman liken her beloved?

**A.** Her beloved is like a cluster of henna flowers in the vineyards of En Gedi. [1:14]

---

**Q?** How does her lover describe her eyes?

**A.** He says her eyes are like doves. [1:15]

---

**Q?** What does the woman say serves as their bed?

**A.** Lush plants serve as their bed. [1:16]

---

**Q?** Of what does the woman say the beams and rafters are made?

**A.** The beams and rafters are made of cedar tree branches and fir branches. [1:17]

---



## Song of Solomon 2

Q? How did the woman describe herself?

A. She described herself as just a flower of in a plain, just a lily in a valley. [2:1]

---

Q? What does the man say she was like among the daughters of his countrymen?

A. He said she was like a lily among thorns. [2:2]

---

Q? How did the woman describe her beloved among the young men?

A. The woman described her young man as the apricot tree among the trees of the forest. [2:3]

---

Q? Where did the woman sit?

A. She sat down under his shadow with great delight. [2:3]

---

Q? What was sweet to her taste?

A. His fruit was sweet to her taste. [2:3]

---

Q? Where did her young man bring her?

A. Her young man brought her to the banqueting hall. [2:4]

---

Q? What was his banner over her?

A. His banner over her was love. [2:4]

---

Q? What did the young woman want to revive and refresh herself?

A. The young woman wanted raisin cakes to revive her and apricots to refresh her. [2:5]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where were the young man's left and right hands?

**A.** His left hand was under her head and his right hand embraced her. [2:6]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the young woman want the daughters of Jerusalem's men to swear?

**A.** The young woman wanted the young women to swear that they would not interrupt the young woman and her beloved's lovemaking until it was over. [2:7]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What sound did the young woman hear?

**A.** The young woman heard the sound of her beloved. [2:8]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did she say her beloved was doing?

**A.** He was leaping over the mountains and jumping over the hills. [2:8]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did she say her beloved was like?

**A.** She said her beloved was like a gazelle or a young stag. [2:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did her beloved want her to do with him?

**A.** He wanted her to get up and go away with him. [2:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did he say was past and what was over and gone?

**A.** He said he winter was past and the rain was over and gone. [2:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What had appeared in the land?

**A.** Flowers had appeared in the land. [2:12]

---

**Q?** For what was it time?

**A.** It was time for pruning and the singing of birds. [2:12]

---

**Q?** What ripened and was in blossom?

**A.** The green figs ripened and the vines were in blossom. [2:13]

---

**Q?** What did her beloved want his beautiful one to do?

**A.** He wanted her to arise and come away. [2:13]

---

**Q?** What does her beloved call her?

**A.** Her beloved calls her his dove. [2:14]

---

**Q?** What does her beloved want to see and hear?

**A.** Her beloved wanted to see her lovely face and hear her sweet voice. [2:14]

---

**Q?** What did the woman want him to catch?

**A.** The woman wanted him to catch the jackals. [2:15]

---

**Q?** To whom did the woman's beloved belong?

**A.** Her beloved belonged to her. [2:16]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** To whom did the woman belong?

**A.** She belonged to her beloved. [2:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did her beloved do among the lilies?

**A.** He grazed among the lilies with pleasure. [2:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did she want her beloved to do?

**A.** She wanted her beloved to go away. [2:17]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** When did she want her beloved to go away?

**A.** She wanted her beloved to go away before the soft winds of dawn blew and the shadows fled away. [2:17]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did she want him to be like?

**A.** She wanted him to be like a gazelle or a young stag on the rugged mountains. [2:17]

\_\_\_\_\_

### Song of Solomon 3

**Q?** For whom was the woman longing but could not find?

**A.** The woman was longing for the one whom she loved but could not find him. [3:1]

---

**Q?** For whom was the woman searching through the streets and squares but could not find?

**A.** The woman was searching through the streets and squares but could not find her beloved. [3:2]

---

**Q?** What did the woman ask the watchmen when they found her?

**A.** She asked them, "Have you seen my beloved?" [3:3]

---

**Q?** When did she find the one whom her soul loved?

**A.** She found the one whom her soul loved a little while after she passed the watchmen in the city. [3:4]

---

**Q?** What did she do with her beloved?

**A.** She held him and would not let him go until she had brought him into her mother's house. [3:4]

---

**Q?** What did the woman want the daughters of Jerusalem's men to promise?

**A.** The woman wanted the daughters of Jerusalem's men to promise they would not interrupt their lovemaking until they were finished. [3:5]

---

**Q?** What did the young woman see coming from the wilderness that was perfumed with myrrh and frankincense and powders?

**A.** She saw the portable litter of Solomon with 60 warriors around it. [3:6-7]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** At what were the warriors good?

**A.** The warriors were good with the sword and in warfare. [3:8]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King Solomon make for himself?

**A.** King Solomon made a sedan chair from wood from Lebanon. [3:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King Solomon's sedan chair look like?

**A.** The chair had posts of silver, a back of gold, a seat of purple cloth, and was decorated with love. [3:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** At what did the young woman want the women of Jerusalem to look?

**A.** She wanted them to look at King Solomon. [3:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was King Solomon wearing on his marriage day?

**A.** He wore a crown with which his mother crowned him on his marriage day. [3:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

### Song of Solomon 4

**Q?** How did the woman's lover describe her eyes?

**A.** Her eyes were as doves behind her veil. [4:1]

---

**Q?** How did the woman's lover describe her hair?

**A.** Her hair was like a flock of goats going down Mount Gilead. [4:1]

---

**Q?** How did her lover describe her teeth.

**A.** Her teeth were like newly shorn and washed female sheep. [4:2]

---

**Q?** What did the woman's beloved say about her lips and mouth.

**A.** He said her lips were like a thread of scarlet and that her mouth was lovely. [4:3]

---

**Q?** How did the woman's beloved describe her cheeks.

**A.** He described her cheeks like pomegranate halves behind her veil. [4:3]

---

**Q?** How did the woman's beloved describe her neck?

**A.** He described her neck as the tower of David built in rows of stone with a thousand soldiers' shields hanging on it. [4:4]

---

**Q?** How did the woman's beloved describe her two breasts?

**A.** He described her two breasts as two fawns, twins of a gazelle, grazing among the lilies. [4:5]

---

**Q?** Where would her lover go until dawn comes and the shadows flee?

**A.** He said he would go to the mountain of myrrh and the hill of frankincense. [4:6]

---

**Q?** In what way was his love beautiful?

**A.** His love was beautiful in every way. [4:7]

---

**Q?** What did his beautiful love not have?

**A.** His beautiful love did not have any blemish. [4:7]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon call his bride?

**A.** Solomon called her his sister. [4:9]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon tell his bride she had stolen from him?

**A.** He said she had stolen his heart. [4:9]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon say was beautiful and what was it better than?

**A.** Solomon said her love was beautiful and better than wine. [4:9]

---

**Q?** What was the smell of her perfume better than?

**A.** The smell of her perfume better than any spice. [4:10]

---

**Q?** With what did he say his bride's lips dripped and what was under her tongue?

**A.** He said his bride's lips dripped with honey and she had honey and milk under her tongue. [4:11]

---



\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the woman's clothes smell like?

**A.** Her clothes smelled like the fragrance of Lebanon. [4:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What kind of garden and what kind of spring did Solomon say his sister, his bride, was like?

**A.** Solomon said she was like a garden locked up and a spring that was sealed. [4:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** To what did he liken the woman's branches?

**A.** He likened her branches to a grove of pomegranate trees with choice fruit and plants and all the finest spices. [4:13-14]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** With what kinds of water does Solomon describe his lover?

**A.** He described her as a garden spring, a well of fresh water, and streams flowing down from Lebanon. [4:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** On what does the young woman want the north and south winds to blow and why?

**A.** She wanted the north and south winds to blow on her garden so that its spices would give off their fragrance. [4:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did she want her beloved to do and to eat?

**A.** She wanted her beloved to come into his garden and to eat some of its choice fruit. [4:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

## Song of Solomon 5

Q? Where had Solomon come?

A. Solomon had come into his garden. [5:1]

---

Q? Of what was Solomon's bride dreaming?

A. She was dreaming of her beloved's knocking and talking. [5:2]

---

Q? What had Solomon's love already done?

A. She had already taken off her robe and washed her feet. [5:3]

---

Q? Where had Solomon put his hand?

A. Solomon had put his hand through the opening of the door latch. [5:4]

---

Q? With what were the bride's hands dipping when she opened the door?

A. Her hands were dripping with moist myrrh. [5:5]

---

Q? What did the bride find when she opened the door and how did she feel?

A. She found that her beloved had turned and gone, so her heart sank and she became sad. [5:6]

---

Q? What did the watchmen do when they found Solomon's bride?

A. They struck and wounded her and took away her cloak. [5:7]

---

**Q?** What did the bride ask the women of Jerusalem to promise?

**A.** She asked the women of Jerusalem to promise that they would tell her if they found her beloved. [5:8]

---

**Q?** How did the young woman's beloved make her feel?

**A.** The young woman's beloved made her feel sick with love. [5:8]

---

**Q?** What did the young women ask of the bride?

**A.** They asked her how and why her beloved is better than another. [5:9]

---

**Q?** How did the young woman describe her beloved?

**A.** She described him as radiant, ruddy, and outstanding. [5:10]

---

**Q?** How did the woman describe her beloved's head and hair?

**A.** She described his head as pure gold and his hair as curly and black. [5:11]

---

**Q?** How did the woman describe her beloved's eyes?

**A.** She described his eyes like doves washed in milk. [5:12]

---

**Q?** How did Solomon's bride describe his cheeks and lips?

**A.** She described his cheeks like spice gardens and his lips as myrrh soaked lilies. [5:13]

---

**Q?** How did the woman describe her beloved's arms and abdomen?

**A.** She described his arms as gold with jewels and his abdomen as ivory covered with sapphires. [5:14]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did the woman describe her beloved's legs and his appearance?

**A.** She described his legs as marble pillars with gold bases and his appearance like Lebanon, as special as the cedars. [5:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did Solomon's bride describe her beloved's mouth and Solomon to Jerusalem's daughters?

**A.** She described his mouth as most sweet and that Solomon was completely lovely. [5:16]

### Song of Solomon 6

**Q?** What questions do the women of Jerusalem ask of the young woman?

**A.** They ask her where her beloved has gone and in what direction has he gone? [6:1]

---

**Q?** For what did the young women want to seek?

**A.** The young women wanted to seek for the young woman's beloved. [6:1]

---

**Q?** What does the young woman say her beloved was doing?

**A.** The young woman said he was in his spice gardens to graze in the garden and gather lilies? [6:2]

---

**Q?** To whom did the young woman and her lover belong?

**A.** The young woman and her lover belonged to each other. [6:3]

---

**Q?** Where did the young woman's lover graze?

**A.** The young woman's lover grazed among the lilies. [6:3]

---

**Q?** What two cities did the woman's lover use to describe her?

**A.** He described her as two cities, Tirzah and Jerusalem. [6:4]

---

**Q?** How did her beloved feel about her?

**A.** He felt that she was completely fascinating. [6:4]

---

**Q?** Why did the woman's lover want her to turn her eyes away from him?

**A.** The woman's lover wanted her to turn her eyes away from him because her eyes overwhelmed him. [6:5]

---

**Q?** How did the woman's lover describe her hair?

**A.** He described her hair as a flock of goats on the slopes of Mount Gilead. [6:5]

---

**Q?** How did her lover describe her teeth?

**A.** He described her teeth as a flock of ewes coming up from the washing place. [6:6]

---

**Q?** How did her lover describe her cheeks?

**A.** Her lover described her cheeks as pomegranate halves behind her veil. [6:7]

---

**Q?** How many other women did the woman's lover say there were?

**A.** He said there were 60 queens, 80 concubines, and young women without number. [6:8]

---

**Q?** How did the woman's lover describe his dove?

**A.** The woman's lover described her as his undefiled, the only one, and the special and favorite daughter of her mother. [6:9]

---

**Q?** What did the queens and the concubines say about her when they saw her?

**A.** The queens and concubines praised her. [6:9]

---

**Q?** How did the woman's lover describe her?

**A.** The woman's lover described her like the dawn, the moon, the sun, and completely fascinating. [6:10]

---

**Q?** Why did the woman's lover go into the grove of nut trees?

**A.** The woman's lover went into the grove of nut trees to see if the vines had budded and the pomegranates were in bloom. [6:11]

---

**Q?** How did the woman's lover feel.

**A.** The woman's lover felt as though he were riding in the chariot of a prince. [6:12]

---

**Q?** What did the woman's lover want her to do?

**A.** The woman's lover wanted her to turn back to him. [6:13]

---

**Q?** Why did the woman's lover want her to turn to him?

**A.** The woman's lover wanted her to turn to him so that he may gaze on her. [6:13]

---

**Q?** What did the young woman say about herself?

**A.** The young woman described herself as the perfect woman who seemed to be dancing between two rows of dancers. [6:13]

---

## Song of Solomon 7

**Q?** How did Solomon describe his lover's feet in her sandals and the curves of her thighs?

**A.** He described her feet in her sandals as beautiful and the curves of her thighs like jewels. [7:1]

---

**Q?** How did Solomon describe his love's navel and belly?

**A.** Solomon described his love's navel as a round bowl which never lacks mixed wine and her belly as mound of wheat surrounded with lilies. [7:2]

---

**Q?** How did Solomon describe his lover's two breasts?

**A.** Solomon described her two breasts like two fawns, twins of a gazelle. [7:3]

---

**Q?** How did Solomon describe his lover's neck, eyes, and nose?

**A.** Solomon described her neck as an ivory tower, her eyes like a pool, and her nose like the tower in Lebanon. [7:4]

---

**Q?** How did Solomon describe his lover's head and hair?

**A.** Solomon described her head like Mount Carmel and her hair as dark. [7:5]

---

**Q?** How did Solomon describe his lover and her breasts?

**A.** He described her as a date palm tree and her breasts as clusters of fruit. [7:7]

---

**Q?** What did he also want his lover's breasts and breath to be like?

**A.** He also wanted his lover's breasts to be like grape clusters and her breath to be sweet like the smell of apricot fruit. [7:8]

---



\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did he want his lover's mouth to be like?

**A.** He wanted her mouth to be like the best wine. [7:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** To whom did the young woman belong and whom did he desire?

**A.** The young woman belonged to her beloved and her beloved desired her. [7:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where did the young woman want her beloved to go with her?

**A.** She wanted him to go into the countryside to spend the night in the villages. [7:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did she want her beloved to rise early?

**A.** She wanted him to rise early to see if the vines in the vineyards and the pomegranates had budded. [7:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did she say she would give her beloved when they got to the vineyards?

**A.** She said she would give him her love. [7:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did she say the mandrakes would do?

**A.** She said the mandrakes would give off their fragrance. [7:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did she say was at the door where she and her lover were staying?

**A.** She said that at the door where they were staying there were all sorts of choice fruits, new and old, that she had stored up for him. [7:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

## Song of Solomon 8

**Q?** What did the woman wish that her lover was like and why?

**A.** She wished he were like her brother so that she could kiss her lover at any time and no one would despise her. [8:1]

---

**Q?** Where would the woman have liked to bring her lover?

**A.** She would have liked to bring him to her mother's house so he could teach her. [8:2]

---

**Q?** What were her lover's left and right hands doing?

**A.** His left hand was holding his head and his right hand is hugging her. [8:3]

---

**Q?** What did the woman want Jerusalem's women to promise?

**A.** The woman wanted Jerusalem's women to promise that they would not interrupt her and her lover's lovemaking until they were finished. [8:4]

---

**Q?** What did the women of Jerusalem ask?

**A.** They asked who was coming up from the wilderness, leaning on her beloved. [8:5]

---

**Q?** What did the young woman tell her lover when she woke him under the apricot tree?

**A.** She told him that his mother had conceived and given birth to him under the apricot tree. [8:5]

---

**Q?** What did the young woman want her lover to do and why?

**A.** She wanted him to set her as a seal over his heart because love is as strong as death and a hot flame. [8:6]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What couldn't stop love?

**A.** Huge amounts of moving water could not stop love. [8:7]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the woman's brothers say about their little sister?

**A.** They said that her breasts had not yet grown and that they wondered what they would do for her when she was promised in marriage. [8:8]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What would the woman's brothers do if she were a wall?

**A.** If she were a wall, they would build a tower of silver on her. [8:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What would the woman's brothers do if she were a door?

**A.** If she were a door, they would adorn her with boards of cedar. [8:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did the young woman describe herself?

**A.** She described herself as a wall with breasts like fortress towers and completely mature. [8:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the young woman say that Solomon did with his vineyard at Baal Hamon?

**A.** Solomon leased his vineyard to those who would take care of it. [8:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What does the young woman say about her own vineyard and those who maintained it?

**A.** She said the 1000 shekels that it brought belonged to Solomon and that those who maintained it would get 200 shekels. [8:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the woman's lover say to her who lived in the gardens about what his friends, as well as he, wanted to hear?

**A.** He said that his friends, as well as he, wanted to be the ones to hear her voice. [8:13]

---

**Q?** What did the young woman want her beloved to do and be like?

**A.** She wanted her beloved to hurry and to be like a deer. [8:14]

---

## translationWords

### angry, anger

#### Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

#### Bible References:

Waiting

## anoint, anointed

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

**banquet****Definition:**

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as, “elaborate meal” or “important feast” or “multi-course meal.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say, “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## blemish

### Facts:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include, “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: , [believer](#), [clean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

*from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.*

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**bride****Definition:**

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term “bride” is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the “bridegroom” for the Church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#), [Church](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## call, calling, called, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray](#), [prayer](#) )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

## **captive, captivity**

### **Definition:**

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **Carmel, Mount Carmel**

### **Facts:**

“Mount Carmel” refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called “Carmel” located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal’s sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn’t just a single mountain, “Mount Carmel” could be translated as, “mountain on the Carmel mountain range” or “Carmel mountain range.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## cedar

### Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## chariot

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

## **companion**

### **Facts:**

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **conceive, conception**

### **Definition:**

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as, “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as, “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [womb](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **concubine**

### **Definition:**

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.often
- The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**crown, to crown****Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## curtain

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: [holy place](#), [most holy place](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Damascus

### Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future. more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [believer](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## **death, die, dead**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### **1. Physical death**

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### **2. Spiritual death**

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

## **deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn**

### **Definition:**

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term “doe” refers to a female deer and a “fawn” is the name of a baby deer.
- The term “buck” refers to a male deer.
- A “roebuck” is the male of the specific variety called “roedeer.”
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## delight

### Definition:

A “delight” is something that pleases someone greatly or causes much joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “take joy in” or “be happy about” it.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- If a person’s delight is in something it means that he enjoys it very much.
- The expression, “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means, “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as, “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as, “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **desert, wilderness**

### **Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

u

## dove, pigeon

### Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **dream**

### **Definition:**

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **[08-07]** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **[16-11]** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **[23-01]** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

## En Gedi

### Definition:

En Gedi is the name of a city in the wilderness of Judah southeast of Jerusalem.

- EnGedi was located on the western bank of the Salt Sea.
- Part of its name means “fountain,” referring to a spring of water that flows down from the city into the sea.
- En Gedi was known for having beautiful vineyards and other fertile land, probably due to the continual watering by the fountain of water.
- There were strongholds in En Gedi which David fled to when he was being chased by King Saul.

(See also: [David](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [fountain](#), [spring](#), [Judah](#), [rest](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [stronghold](#), [fortress](#), [fortified](#), [vineyard](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**fig****Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## fire

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **flock, herd**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: *goat, kid, ox, oxen, pig, swine, pork, sheep, ram, ewe,* )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## flood

### Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action as in, “the land was flooded by river water.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include, “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison, “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor as in, “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression, “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears soak my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **fountain, spring**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## frankincense

### Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [learned men](#), [astrologers](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## fruit, fruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Gilead

### Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## goat, kid

### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **gold**

### **Definition:**

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## grape

### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## hades, sheol

### Definition:

The terms “hades” and “sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

### Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the word “sheol” or “hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to the term to explain it, for example, “sheol, place where dead people are” or “hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#), [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heart

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting



## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

Honey is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever the bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## horse

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Kedar

### Facts:

Kedar was the name of Ishmael's second son. It is also the name of an important city, which was probably named after the man.

- The city of Kedar is located in the northern part of Arabia near the southern border of Palestine. In Bible times, it was known for its greatness and beauty.
- The descendants of Kedar formed a large people group that is also called "Kedar."
- The phrase "dark tents of Kedar" refers to the black goat hair tents the people of Kedar lived in.
- These people raised sheep and goats. They also used camels for transporting things.
- In the Bible, the phrase "the glory of Kedar" refers to the greatness of that city and its people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [Ishmael](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## king

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## **kiss**

### **Definition:**

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression "to kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Lebanon

### Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was also thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), [fir](#), [Phoenicia](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **leopard**

### **Facts:**

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [beast](#), [Daniel](#), [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## like, likeness

### Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression, “the likeness of” could be translated as, “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression, “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as, “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [perish](#), [perishing](#), [perishable](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**lion****Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”



- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Mount Hermon

### Facts:

Mount Hermon is the name of the tallest mountain in Israel at the southern tip of the Lebanon mountain range.

- It is located north of the Sea of Galilee, at the northern border between Israel and Syria.
- Other names given to Mount Hermon by other people groups were “Mount Sirion” and “Mount Senir.”
- Mount Hermon has three major peaks. The tallest peak is around 2,800 meters high.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **myrrh**

### **Definition:**

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](#), [learned men](#), [astrologers](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## name

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **oath, swear, swear by**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**oil****Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **palm**

### **Definition:**

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**perfect****Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault.” or “not having any faults.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## Pharaoh, king of Egypt

### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as, "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[08-08]****Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **[09-02]** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **[09-13]**"I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

## pillar, column

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **pomegranate**

### **Facts:**

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

[Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

## possess, possession

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## praise

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

## prince, princess

### Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## promise

### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

## **pure, purify, purification**

### **Definition:**

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## purple

### Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ephod](#), [Philippi](#), [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## queen

### Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- The term “queen mothAthaliaher” usually refers to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence, as was seen in the case of Athaliah who influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Athaliah](#), [Esther](#), [king](#), [Persia](#), [Persians ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Sheba](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## rejoice

### Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## robe

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by both men and women. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short in length.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**sandal****Definition:**

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot with straps around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property by one man taking off a sandal and giving it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## seal, to seal

### Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- To “sleep with” someone is a common way of referring to having sexual relations. The past tense is, “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book, “Song of Solomon,” the ULB uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This is related to the expression, “make love to.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Some languages may use different expressions of this term in different contexts, depending on whether it is talking about a husband and wife, or whether it is about some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include, “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as, “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See: [sexual immorality](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## shadow

### Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## sheep, ram, ewe

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

## shepherd, to shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## shield

### Definition:

A shield is an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval in shape and were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal that were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Paul also talks about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that believing in Jesus, and living out that faith in obedience to God, will protect believers from spiritual attacks from Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **sister**

### **Definition:**

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the New Testament, “sister” is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase, “brothers and sisters” is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book, Song of Songs, “sister” refers to a lover or a spouse.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include, “sister in Christ” or “spiritual sister” or “woman who believes in Jesus” or “fellow woman believer.”
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for “believer,” this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of “loved one” or “dear one.”

(See also: [brother in Christ](#), [in Jesus](#), [in the Lord](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well-known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the beginning years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-14]** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **[18-03]** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

## soul

### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means, “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as, “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for translating the terms “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase, “dividing soul and spirit” could mean, “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **stronghold, fortress, fortified**

### **Definition:**

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## sword

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## teach, teaching, teacher, taught

### Definition:

The terms “teach” and “teaching” refer to telling other people information they didn’t know before. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [teacher](#), [Teacher](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## tent

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**terror, terrify****Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**thorn, thistle****Facts:**

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [to crown](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## time

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” is often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events take place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- Both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three and a half year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- Phrases such as “second time” or “many times” refer to the number of occurrences that something happened.
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” **Doublet**

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Tirzah

### Facts:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

- The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
- Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
- Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's grand-daughters who asked to be given a portion of the land, since they had no brothers to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Manasseh](#), [Shechem](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## turn, turn away, turn back

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## veil

### Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb “to veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a more accurate term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as, “thin, cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**vine****Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **vineyard**

### **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [vine](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**voice****Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**warrior, soldier****Facts:**

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [courageous](#), [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**watch, watchman****Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**watchtower, tower****Definition:**

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [watch](#), [watchman](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## **wheat**

### **Definition:**

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## translationAcademy

### Active or Passive

*This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

**ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

### Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

### Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

### Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
  - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

## Doublet

*This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

### Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”



## Ellipsis

*This answers the question: What is ellipsis?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

### Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous  
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

### Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”  
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
  - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

## Euphemism

*This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
  - “whether we are alive or dead”

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

*This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?*

**Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

## Hypothetical Situations

*This answers the question: What is a hypothetical situation?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Writing Styles*

“If the sun stopped shining...” “What if the sun stopped shining...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...” “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they’ll understand why the event was imagined.

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### 1. Hypothetical situation in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent.

### 2. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that people do not mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if* he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### 3. Hypothetical situation in the future

*Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened.* (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### 4. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, “*If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.* For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULB)



Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus' wished that the people were either hot or cold. He was rebuking them.

### Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/GfFX1wWjJhA> ) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/jIbY2ikNtHU> ).

## Idiom

*This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

### Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
  - “I am crying my eyes out”

## Litotes

*This answers the question: What is litotes?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

### Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

### Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

### Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
  - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
  - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
  - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

## Metaphor

*This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

### Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

## Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

## Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.



- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB )

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted."

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

## Metonymy

*This answers the question: What is a metonymy?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
  - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
  - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
  - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
  - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

## Parallelism

*This answers the question: What is parallelism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

## Personification

*This answers the question: What is personification?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*



## Rhetorical Question

*This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

*Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!* (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
  - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
  - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
  - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
  - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
  - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

## Simile

*This answers the question: What is a simile?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day.* (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
  - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
  - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
  - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
  - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
  - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Synecdoche

*This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
  - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*



## Biblical Money

*This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

### Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

### Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*<sup>1</sup>, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."<sup>2</sup> (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- <sup>[1]</sup> five hundred days's wages
- <sup>[2]</sup> fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*<sup>1</sup>, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
  - <sup>[1]</sup> A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

## How to Translate Names

*This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
  - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
  - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Paul*”<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
  - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) \*  
 “But \_\_Saul\_\_, who is also called \_\_Paul\_\_, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” \* \*\*It came about in Iconium that \_\_Paul\_\_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue\*\*  
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"  
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

## Numbers

*This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

### Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.



**Consistency**

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

**Consistency in the ULB and UDB**

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

## Translate Unknowns

*This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

### Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
  - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
  - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
  - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

## Poetry

*This answers the question: What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Writing Styles*

Poetry combines figures of speech with pleasant sounds and deep feelings to make a passage both beautiful and easier to remember.

### Description

Poetry is one of various way in which to use words to make the writing more beautiful and to show the feeling. It is used to express a stronger emotional feeling than simple non-poetic forms would express. Poetry is easier to remember and tends to last longer than ordinary speech.

### Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as **Metaphor**, **Simile**, **Metonymy**, **Personification**, and **Apostrophe**.
- Parallel lines (See: **Parallelism** and **Parallelism with the Same Meaning**)
- Repetition of some or all of a line
  - **Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULB)
- Lines of similar length.
  - **Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULB)
- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines
  - "Twinkle, twinkle little *star*. How I wonder what you *are*." (from an English rhyme)
- The same sound repeated many times
  - "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions

### Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

### Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is the probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

### Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

### Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;  
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULB)

This example of **Parallelism with the Same Meaning** has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;  
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See: **Parallelism**)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;  
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULB)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See: **Personification**)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
(Psalm 136:1-3 ULB)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

## Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,  
or stand in the pathway with sinners,  
or sit in the assembly of mockers.  
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,  
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULB)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.  
(The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

”Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*  
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*  
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.  
God is his constant *delight*  
He does what God says *is right*  
He thinks of it all day *and night*”

2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

- “This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.”

3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

- “The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Symbolic Language*